

ABB INDUSTRIAL DRIVES

ACS880-01 drives

Hardware manual



ACS880-01 drives

Hardware manual

Table of contents



1. Safety instructions



4. Mechanical installation



6. Electrical installation – Global (IEC)



7. Electrical installation – North America (NEC)



10. Start-up



Table of contents

Safety instructions	
Contents of this chapter	15
Safety messages	
· ·	18
	19
	19
	20
	21
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Safety in operation	22
Introduction to the manual	
Contents of this chapter	23
•	
Related documents	27
Operation principle and hardware description	
Overview of power and control connections	34
Control panel	
Control panel mounting platform cours	35
Control panel mounting platform cover	35 35
Control panel mounting platform cover Control panel door mounting kits	35 35 35
Control panel mounting platform cover	35 35 35 36
	Contents of this chapter

Option codes	38
Mechanical installation	
Contents of this chapter	43
Safety	
Mounting positions	
Required free space	
Examining the installation site	
Necessary tools	
Moving the drive	
Unpacking and examining the delivery	
Examining the delivery	
Package of frames R1R4	
Package of frames R5 and R6	
Frame R5 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)	50
Frame R6 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)	
Package of frame R7	52
Frame R7 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)	54
Package of frames R8 and R9	55
Frame R8 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)	
Frame R9 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)	
Installing the drive vertically	
Vibration dampers (option +C131)	
Flange mounting (option +C135)	59
UK gland plate (option +H358)	
Cabinet installation (options +P940 and +P944)	
Frames R1 to R4 (IP21, UL Type 1)	60
Frames R5 to R9 (IP21, UL Type 1)	
Frames R1 to R9 (IP55, UL Type 12)	
Installing the drive horizontally	
Guidelines for planning the electrical installation	
Contents of this chapter	
Limitation of liability	
North America	
Selecting the main supply disconnecting device	
Selecting the main contactor	
Examining the compatibility of the motor and drive	
Protecting the motor insulation and bearings	
Requirements tables	
Requirements for ABB motors, P_n < 100 kW (134 hp)	70
Requirements for ABB motors, $P_n \ge 100 \text{ kW (134 hp)}$	71
Requirements for non-ABB motors, P_n < 100 kW (134 hp)	72
Requirements for non-ABB motors, $P_n \ge 100 \text{ kW}$ (134 hp)	73



5

Abbreviations	74
Availability of du/dt filter and common mode filter by drive	
type	74
Additional requirements for explosion-safe (EX) motors	74
Additional requirements for ABB motors of types other than M2_,	
M3_, M4_, HX_ and AM	74
Additional requirements for braking applications	74
Additional requirements for ABB high-output and IP23 motors	74
Additional requirements for non-ABB high-output and IP23	
motors	75
Additional data for calculating the rise time and the peak	
line-to-line voltage	76
Additional note for sine filters	77
Selecting the power cables	
General guidelines	
Typical power cable sizes	78
Power cable types	
Preferred power cable types	
Alternate power cable types	
Not allowed power cable types	
Additional guidelines – North America	
Metal conduit	
Power cable shield	
Grounding requirements	
Additional grounding requirements – IEC	
Additional grounding requirements – UL (NEC)	85
Selecting the control cables	
Shielding	
Signals in separate cables	
Signals that can be run in the same cable	
Relay cable	
Control panel to drive cable	
PC tool cable	
Routing the cables	
General guidelines – IEC	
General guidelines – North America	
Continuous motor cable shield/conduit and metal enclosure for	0,
equipment on the motor cable	22
Separate control cable ducts	
Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection	
Protecting the drive and the input power cable in short-circuits	
Protecting the motor and motor cable in short-circuits	ar
Protecting the drive against thermal overload	
Protecting the input power cable against thermal overload	
Protecting the motor cables against thermal overload	
Frotecting the motor cables against thermal overload	90



	Connecting the control cables	124
	Connection process	124
	Connecting a PC	126
	Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel)	126
	Installing option modules	129
	Fieldbus cabling	131
	Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit	134
	Installation procedure	
	Installing the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module	
	Installing the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module	
7	Electrical installation – North America (NEC)	
	Contents of this chapter	137
	Safety	137
	Necessary tools	137
	Measuring the insulation	137
	Grounding system compatibility check	
	Connecting the power cables	138
	Connection diagram	
	Connection procedure for frames R1 to R3	140
	Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5	
	Connection procedure for frames R6 to R9	
	Connecting the control cables	
	Connection procedure	
	Connecting a PC	
	Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel)	
	Installing option modules	157
8	Control unit	
	Contents of this chapter	159
	General	
	ZCU-12 layout	
	Default control connection diagram of the drive control unit (ZCU)	
	Additional information on the connections	
	Connecting motor temperature sensors to the drive	
	Power supply for the control unit (XPOW)	
	Digital interlock (DIIL)	
	The XD2D connector	
	Safe torque off (XSTO)	
	Safety functions module connection (X12)	
	Connector data	
	ZCU ground isolation diagram	
	-	

10 Start-up

11	Fault tracing	
	Contents of this chapter 177	
	LEDs	
	Warning and fault messages	
12	Maintenance	
	Contents of this chapter	
	Maintenance intervals	
	Description of symbols	
	Recommended maintenance intervals after start-up180	
	Cleaning the exterior of the drive 181	
	Cleaning the heatsink 181	
	Fans	
	Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R1R3	
	Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of IP55 frames R1R3 184	
	Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R4 and R5186	
	Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R4 and R5 187	
	Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R6R8	
	Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R6R9 (IP21, UL Type 1) 189	
	Replacing the second auxiliary cooling fan of frame R9 (IP55, UL	
	Type 12)	
	Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frames	
	R8 and R9	
	R9 (drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5)	
	Replacing the drive (IP21, UL Type 1, frames R1R9)	
	Capacitors	
	Reforming the capacitors	
	Control panel	

	Replacing safety functions modules (FSO-12, option +Q973 and FSO-21,	
	option +Q972)	
	Functional safety components	201
13	Technical data	
	Contents of this chapter	203
	Marine type-approved drives (option +C132)	
	Drives for SynRM motors	203
	Electrical ratings	
	Definitions	212
	UL Listed drive multiple ratings	212
	Deratings	
	Surrounding air temperature derating	
	Altitude derating	
	Deratings for special settings in the drive control program	215
	Fuses (IEC)	227
	aR fuses DIN 43653 stud-mount (frames R1 to R9)	228
	aR fuses DIN 43620 blade style (frames R1 to R9)	231
	gG fuses DIN 43620 blade style (frames R1 to R9)	235
	Quick guide for selecting between gG and aR fuses	239
	Calculating the short-circuit current of the installation	242
	Calculation example	242
	Fuses (UL)	244
	Circuit breakers (IEC)	248
	ABB miniature and molded case circuit breakers	249
	ABB manual motor starters	
	Circuit breakers (UL)	254
	ABB inverse time circuit breakers	254
	230 V circuit breakers	254
	480 V circuit breakers	255
	600 V circuit breakers	
	Dimensions, weights and free space requirements	
	Package dimensions	262
	Free space requirements	262
	Losses, cooling data and noise	
	Cooling air flow and heat dissipation for flange mounting (option +C135).	
	Connector and entry data for the power cables	
	IEC	
	UL	
	Connector data for the control cables	
	Typical power cables	272
	Electrical power network specification	
	Motor connection data	
	Efficiency	
	Energy efficiency data (ecodesign)	277



Frame R8, IP55 (UL Type 12)	
Frame R9, IP21 (UL Type 1)	
Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)	309
Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)*	310
15 Resistor braking	
Contents of this chapter	311
Operation principle and hardware description	311
Planning the braking system	
Selecting the brake circuit components	311
Selecting a custom resistor	312
Selecting and routing the brake resistor cables	313
Minimizing electromagnetic interference	313
Maximum cable length	313
EMC compliance of the complete installation	313
Placing the brake resistors	313
Protecting the system against thermal overload	314
Protecting the system in fault situations	314
Protecting the resistor cable against short-circuits	
Mechanical installation	316
Electrical installation	316
Measuring the insulation resistance of the brake resistor circuit	316
Connection diagram	317
Connection procedure	317
Start-up	317
Technical data	
Ratings	318
Degree of protection and thermal constant of the resistor	
Dimensions and weights of external resistors	322
JBR-03	322
SACE08RE44	323
SACE15RE13 and SACE15RE22	324
SAFUR80F500 and SAFUR90F575	324
SAFUR125F500 and SAFUR200F500	325
16 The Safe torque off function	
Contents of this chapter	327
Description	327
Compliance with the European Machinery Directive and the UK Sup	ply
of Machinery (Safety) Regulations	
Wiring	
Activation switch	
Cable types and lengths	
Grounding of protective shields	330

Single drive (internal power supply)	330
Dual-channel connection	330
Single-channel connection	331
Multiple drives	332
Internal power supply	332
External power supply	333
Operation principle	334
Start-up including validation test	335
Competence	335
Validation test reports	
Validation test procedure	335
Use	337
Maintenance	339
Competence	340
Perfect proof test procedure	
Simplified proof test procedure	
Fault tracing	342
Safety data	343
Terms and abbreviations	347
TÜV certificate	349
17 Filters	
Contents of this chapter	
When is a common mode filter or du/dt filter needed?	351
Common mode filters	
du/dt filters	
du/dt filter types	
Description, installation and technical data of the du/dt filters	
Sine filters	
Selecting a sine filter for a drive	
Definitions	
Derating	
Description, installation and technical data	356

Further information





Safety instructions

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains the safety instructions which you must obey when you install, start-up, operate and do maintenance work on the drive. If you ignore the safety instructions, injury, death or damage can occur.



Safety messages

These safety messages help to prevent personal injury and damage to the equipment. The hazard levels comply with standard ANSI Z535.6.

The manual uses these warning symbols:



ADANGER Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



AWARNING Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



EXAMPLE 1 Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE Is used to address practices not related to physical injury, but which can result in equipment damage.

General safety in installation, start-up and maintenance

These instructions are for all persons who do work on the drive.



AWARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.

- Keep the drive in its package until you install it. After unpacking, protect the drive from dust, debris and moisture.
- Use the required personal protective equipment: safety shoes with metal toe cap, safety glasses, protective gloves and long sleeves, etc. Some parts have sharp edges.
- Use a lifting device to lift a heavy drive. Use the designated lifting points. Refer
 to the dimension drawings.
- Be careful when handling a tall module. The module overturns easily because
 it is heavy and has a high center of gravity. Whenever possible, secure the
 module with chains. Do not leave an unsupported module unattended especially
 on a sloping floor.





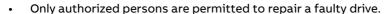


- Beware of hot surfaces. Some parts, such as heatsinks of power semiconductors, and brake resistors, can be hot for a period after operation.
- Before the start-up, vacuum clean the area around the drive to prevent the drive cooling fan from drawing dust inside the drive.
- Make sure that debris from drilling, cutting and grinding does not go into the drive during installation. Electrically conductive debris inside the drive can cause damage or malfunction.
- Make sure that there is sufficient cooling. Refer to the technical data.
- Before you connect voltage to the drive, make sure that all covers are in place. Do not remove the covers when voltage is connected.
- Before you adjust the drive operation limits, make sure that the motor and all driven equipment can operate throughout the set operation limits.

- Before you activate the automatic fault reset or automatic restart functions
 of the drive control program, make sure that no dangerous situations can
 occur. These functions reset the drive automatically and continue operation
 after a fault or break in the power supply. If these functions are activated, the
 installation must be clearly marked as defined in IEC/EN/UL 61800-5-1,
 subclause 6.5.3, for example, "THIS MACHINE STARTS AUTOMATICALLY".
- The maximum number of drive power-ups is five in ten minutes. Too frequent power-ups can damage the charging circuit of the DC capacitors.
- If the drive has connected safety circuits (for example, Safe torque off or emergency stop), validate them at start-up. Refer to separate instructions for the safety circuits.
- Beware of hot air flow from the cooling outlets.
- Do not cover the air inlet or air outlet when the drive operates.

Note:

- If you select an external source for the start command and it is on, the drive starts immediately after a fault reset unless you configure the drive for pulse start. Refer to the firmware manual.
- If the drive is in remote control mode, you cannot stop or start the drive with the control panel.





Electrical safety in installation, start-up and maintenance

Electrical safety precautions

These electrical safety precautions are for all persons who do work on the drive, motor cable or motor.



AWARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation or maintenance work. Do these steps before you do installation or maintenance work.

- 1. Prepare for the work.
 - · Make sure that you have a work order.
 - Do an on-site risk assessment or job hazard analysis.
 - Make sure that you have the correct tools available.
 - · Make sure that the workers are qualified.
 - Select the correct personal protective equipment (PPE).
 - Stop the drive and motor(s).
- 2. Clearly identify the work location and equipment.



- Disconnect all possible voltage sources. Make sure that connection is not possible. Lock out and tag out.
 - Open the main disconnecting device of the drive.
 - If there is a permanent magnet motor connected to the drive, disconnect the motor from the drive with a safety switch or by other means.
 - · Open the main isolating device of the drive.
 - Disconnect all dangerous external voltages from the control circuits.
 - After you disconnect power from the drive, wait 5 minutes to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge before you continue.
- 4. Protect other energized parts in the work location against contact and take special precautions when close to bare conductors.
- 5. Measure that the installation is de-energized. Use a high-quality voltage tester.
 - Before and after you measure the installation, verify the operation of the voltage tester on a known voltage source.
 - Make sure that the voltage between the input power terminals of the drive (L1, L2, L3) and the grounding (PE) busbar is zero.
 - Make sure that the voltage between the output power terminals of the drive (U, V, W) and the grounding (PE) busbar is zero.
 Important! Repeat the measurement with the DC voltage setting of the voltage tester. Measure between each phase and ground. There is a risk of dangerous DC voltage charging due to leakage capacitances of the

drive power-off. The measurement discharges the voltage.

motor circuit. This voltage can remain charged for a long time after the

Note: If cables are not connected to the drive DC terminals, measuring the voltage from the DC terminal screws can give incorrect results.

- 6. Install temporary grounding as required by the local regulations.
- 7. Ask for a permit to work from the person that is responsible for the electrical installation work.

Additional instructions and notes



AWARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, for damage to the equipment can occur.

If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation or maintenance work.

- Make sure that the electrical power network, motor/generator, and environmental conditions agree with the drive data.
- Do not do insulation or voltage withstand tests on the drive.
- If you have a cardiac pacemaker or other electronic medical device, do not go near the motor, drive, or the drive power cabling when the drive is in operation.
 The equipment produces electromagnetic fields that can cause interference in electronic medical devices. This can cause a health hazard.

Note:

- When the drive is connected to the input power, the motor cable terminals and the DC bus are at a dangerous voltage.
 - The brake circuit, including the brake chopper (option +D150) and brake resistor (if it is installed) are also at a dangerous voltage.
 - After you disconnect the drive from the input power, these remain at a dangerous voltage until the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge.
- External wiring can supply dangerous voltages to the relay outputs of the control units of the drive.
- The Safe torque off function does not remove the voltage from the main and auxiliary circuits. The function is not effective against deliberate sabotage or misuse.

Printed circuit boards

NOTICE Use an antistatic wrist strap when you handle printed circuit boards. Do not touch the boards unnecessarily. The boards are sensitive to electrostatic discharge.



Grounding

These instructions are for all persons who are responsible for the grounding of the drive.



AWARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or equipment malfunction can occur, and electromagnetic interference can increase.

If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do grounding work.

- Always ground the drive, the motor and adjoining equipment. This is necessary for personnel safety.
- Make sure that the conductivity of the protective earth (PE) conductors is sufficient and that other requirements are met. Refer to the electrical planning instructions of the drive. Obey the applicable national and local regulations.
- When you use shielded cables, make a 360° grounding of the cable shields at the cable entries to reduce electromagnetic emission and interference.
- In a multiple-drive installation, connect each drive separately to the protective earth (PE) busbar of the power supply.



General safety in operation

These instructions are for all persons that operate the drive.



AWARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.

- If you have a cardiac pacemaker or other electronic medical device, do not go near the motor, drive, or the drive power cabling when the drive is in operation.
 The equipment produces electromagnetic fields that can cause interference in electronic medical devices. This can cause a health hazard.
- Give a stop command to the drive before you reset a fault. If you have an
 external source for the start command and the start is on, the drive starts
 immediately after the fault reset, unless you configure the drive for pulse start.
 Refer to the firmware manual.
- Before you activate the automatic fault reset or automatic restart functions
 of the drive control program, make sure that no dangerous situations can
 occur. These functions reset the drive automatically and continue operation
 after a fault or break in the power supply. If these functions are activated, the
 installation must be clearly marked as defined in IEC/EN/UL 61800-5-1,
 subclause 6.5.3, for example, "THIS MACHINE STARTS AUTOMATICALLY".



Note:

- The maximum number of drive power-ups is five in ten minutes. Too frequent
 power-ups can damage the charging circuit of the DC capacitors. If you need
 to start or stop the drive, use the control panel keys or commands through
 the I/O terminals of the drive or the fieldbus interface.
- If the drive is in remote control mode, you cannot stop or start the drive with the control panel.

Additional instructions for permanent magnet motor drives

Safety in installation, start-up, maintenance

These are additional warnings for permanent magnet motor drives. The other safety instructions in this chapter are also valid.



▲WARNING Obey these instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, for damage to the equipment can occur.

If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation or maintenance work.

 Do not do work on the drive when a rotating permanent magnet motor is connected to it. A rotating permanent magnet motor energizes the drive including its input and output power terminals.

Before installation, start-up and maintenance work on the drive:

- Stop the drive.
- Disconnect the motor from the drive with a safety switch or by other means.
- If you cannot disconnect the motor, make sure that the motor cannot rotate during work. Make sure that no other system, like hydraulic crawling drives, can rotate the motor directly or through any mechanical connection such as belt, nip, rope, etc.
- Do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18).
- Install temporary grounding to the drive output terminals (T1/U, T2/V, T3/W).
 Connect the output terminals together as well as to the PE.

During the start-up:

 Make sure that the motor cannot run at overspeed, for example, when it is driven by the load. Motor overspeed causes an overvoltage that can cause damage to the capacitors in the intermediate circuit of the drive.



Safety in operation

NOTICE Make sure that the motor cannot run at overspeed, for example, when it is driven by the load. Motor overspeed causes an overvoltage that can cause damage to the capacitors in the intermediate circuit of the drive.



Introduction to the manual

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the intended audience and contents of the manual. It contains a flowchart of steps in examining the delivery, installing and commissioning the drive. The flowchart refers to chapters/sections in this manual and in other manuals.

Target audience

This manual is intended for people who plan the installation, install, commission, and do maintenance work on the drive, or create instructions for the end user of the drive concerning the installation and maintenance of the drive.

Read the manual before you do work on the drive. You are expected to know the fundamentals of electricity, wiring, electrical components, and electrical schematic symbols.

Categorization by frame size and option code

The frame size identifies information which concerns only a certain frame size of the drive. The frame size is shown on the type designation label. All frame sizes are listed in the technical data.

The option code (A123) identifies information which concerns only a certain optional selection. The options included in the drive are listed on the type designation label.

Check the installation.

Quick installation, commissioning and operation flowchart

Task See Identify the frame of your drive: R1...R9. Type designation key (page 37) Plan the electrical installation and acquire the accessor-Guidelines for planning the electricies needed (cables, fuses, etc.). al installation (page 67) Check the ratings, required cooling air flow, input Technical data (page 203) power connection, compatibility of the motor, motor connection, and other technical data. Check the installation site. Ambient conditions (page 278) Unpack and examine the drive (only intact units may Mechanical installation (page 43) be started up). If the drive has been non-operation-Make sure that all necessary optional modules and al for more than one year, the conequipment are present and correct. verter DC link capacitors need to be Install the drive mechanically. reformed, Capacitors (page 198) Route the cables. Routing the cables (page 86) If the drive is about to be connected to an IT (ungroun-ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disded), corner-grounded delta, midpoint-grounded delta or TT system, check if you need to disconnect the EMC connecting instructions filter and ground-to-phase varistor. (3AUA0000125152 [English]) Connect the power cables. Electrical installation - Global (IEC) (page 103) or Electrical installa-Connect the control cables. tion - North America (NEC) (page 137)

Installation checklist (page 171)

Task	See
Start the drive up.	Start-up (page 175)
•	
Operate the drive: start, stop, speed control etc.	Quick start-up guide, firmware manual

Terms and abbreviations

Term	Description
DC link	DC circuit between rectifier and inverter
DC link capacitors	Energy storage which stabilizes the intermediate circuit DC voltage
DPMP-01	Mounting platform for control panel (flush mounting)
DPMP-02, DPMP-03	Mounting platform for control panel (surface mounting)
Drive	Frequency converter for controlling AC motors
EFB	Embedded fieldbus
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
EMI	Electromagnetic interference
EMT	Electrical metallic tubing, type of cable conduit
FAIO-01	Analog I/O extension module
FCAN	Optional CANopen® adapter module
FCNA-01	Optional ControlNet™ adapter module
FEN-01	Optional TTL incremental encoder interface module
FEN-11	Optional absolute encoder interface module
FEN-21	Optional resolver interface module
FEN-31	Optional HTL incremental encoder interface module
FENA-21	Optional Ethernet adapter module for EtherNet/IP™, Modbus TCP and PROFINET IO protocols, 2-port
FEPL-02	Optional Ethernet POWERLINK adapter module
FIO-01	Optional digital I/O extension module
FIO-11	Optional analog I/O extension module
FMBT-21	Optional Ethernet adapter module for Modbus TCP protocol
FPBA-01	Optional PROFIBUS DP® adapter module
FPNO-21	Optional PROFINET IO adapter module
FPTC-01	Optional thermistor protection module
FPTC-02	Optional ATEX-certified thermistor protection module for potentially explosive atmospheres
Frame, frame size	Physical size of the drive or power module
FSCS-21	CIP Safety™ functions module
FSE-31	Optional pulse encoder interface module for safety encoder

26 Introduction to the manual

Term	Description
FSO-21	Safety functions module which supports the FSE-31 module and the use of safety encoders
FSO-12	Safety functions module which does not support the use of encoders
FSPS-21	PROFIsafe safety functions module
IGBT	Insulated gate bipolar transistor
Inverter	Converts direct current and voltage to alternating current and voltage.
Parameter	In the drive control program, user-adjustable operation instruction to the drive, or signal measured or calculated by the drive. In some (for example fieldbus) contexts, a value that can be accessed as an object. For example, variable, constant, or signal.
PLC	Programmable logic controller
STO	Safe torque off (IEC/EN 61800-5-2)
UCU	Type of control unit
ZCON	Type of control board
ZCU	Type of control unit
ZGAB	Brake chopper adapter board
ZGAD	Gate driver adapter board
ZINT	Main circuit board
ZMU	Type of memory unit, attached to the control unit

Related documents

For more documentation, go to www.abb.com/drives/documents.



ACS880-01 manuals



Operation principle and hardware description

Contents of this chapter

This chapter briefly describes the operation principle and construction of the drive.

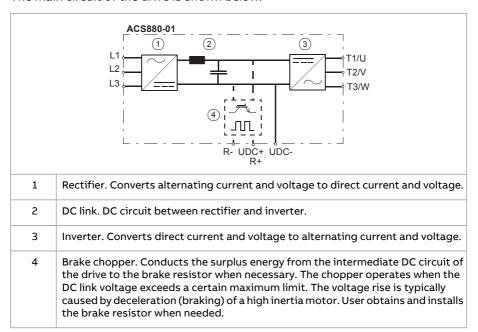
Product overview

The ACS880-01 is a drive for controlling asynchronous AC induction motors, permanent magnet synchronous motors, AC induction servomotors and ABB synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM motors).

The main cooling air fan of the drive is speed controlled and the auxiliary cooling fan on/off controlled.

■ Main circuit

The main circuit of the drive is shown below.



Layout

IP21, UL Type 1

The components of the drive are shown below (view of frame R5).



- 1 Control panel
- 2 Front cover
- 3 Cable entry box
- 4 Four attaching points at the back of the unit
- 5 Heatsink
- 6 Lifting eyes

IP55 (option +B056)

The components of the IP55 drive (option +B056) are shown below (view of frame R4).



- 1 Control panel behind the control panel cover
- 2 Front cover
- 3 Four fastening points at the back of the drive
- 4 Heatsink
- 5 Lifting eyes

UL Type 12 (option +B056)

The components of the UL Type 12 drive (option +B056) are shown below (view of frame R6).



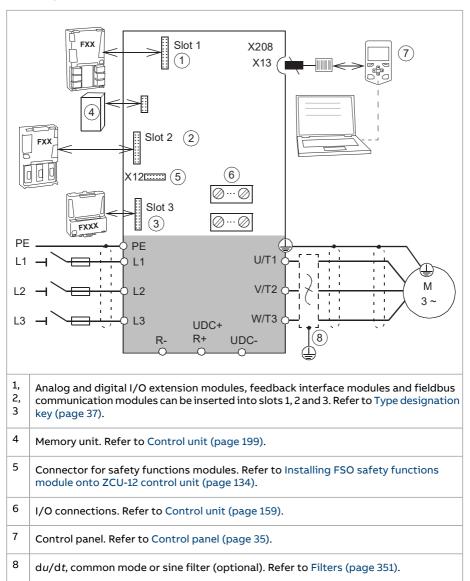
- 1 Control panel behind the control panel cover
- 2 Front cover
- 3 Four attaching points at the back of the unit
- 4 Llifting eyes
- 5 Heatsink
- 6 Hood (included in frames R4...R9)

IP20 (UL Type Open, options +P940 and +P944)

See ACS880...+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement (3AUA0000145446 [English]).

Overview of power and control connections

This diagram shows the power connections and control interfaces of the drive.



Control panel

The control panel can be removed by pulling it forward from the top edge and reinstalled in reverse order. For the use of the control panel, refer to the firmware manual or ACS-AP-I, -S, -W and ACH-AP-H, -W Assistant control panels user's manual (3AUA0000085685 [English]).







Control panel mounting platform cover

In deliveries without control panel (option + 0J400) the control panel mounting platform is covered. The indication LEDs on the platform are visible through the protective cover. Note: The cover is not included with options +0J400+P940 and +0J400+P944.

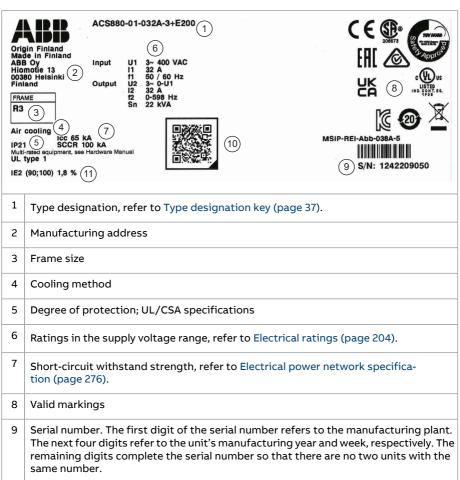


Control panel door mounting kits

You can use a mounting platform to mount the control panel on the cabinet door. Mounting platforms for control panels are available as options from ABB. For more information, refer to:

Manual	Code (English)
DPMP-01 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AUA0000100140
DPMP-02/03 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AUA0000136205
DPMP-04 and DPMP-05 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AXD50000308484
DPMP-06 / 07 mounting platform for control panels installation guide	3AXD50000289561

Type designation label



1	0	Link to product information	
1	1	Typical drive losses when it operates at 90% of the motor nominal frequency and 100% of the drive nominal output current	

Type designation key

The type designation contains information on the specifications and configuration of the drive. The first digits from left express the basic drive type. The optional selections are given next, separated by plus signs. Codes that start with zero (eg. +0A123) indicate the absence of a specified feature. The main selections are described below. The list describes the meaning of the option codes, not availability. Not all selections are available for all types or in all regions. For the availabity, refer to the ordering information.

Basic code

Code	Description				
ACS880	Product series				
Туре					
ACS880- 01 The standard delivery includes: Wall mounted drive, IP21 (UL Type 1), ACS-/ W assistant control panel with Bluetooth connection, no EMC filter, DC che ACS880 primary control program, Safe torque off function, cable entry bo brake chopper in frames R1 to R4, coated boards, printed quick installation start-up guide.					
	Refer to Option codes (page 38) for options.				
Size	Size				
xxxx	Refer to Electrical ratings (page 204).				
Voltage ra	Voltage range				
2	208240 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3 \sim 230 V AC.				
3	3 380415 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3 ~ 400 V AC.				
5	380500 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3 \sim 400/480/500 V AC.				
7 525690 V. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3 ~ 525/600/690 V AC.					

Option codes

Code	Description
B056	IP55 (UL Type 12)
C131	Vibration dampers
C132	Marine type approval
C135	Flange mounting
C205	Marine product certification issued by DNV GL
C206	Marine product certification issued by the American Bureau of Shipping (ABS)
C207	Marine product certification issued by Lloyd's Register (LR)
C208	Marine product certification issued by Registro Italiano Navale (RINA)
C209	Marine product certification issued by Bureau Veritas
C210	Marine product certification issued by Nippon Kaiji Kyokai (NK)
C227	Marine product certification issued by Korean Register of Shipping (KR)
C228	Marine product certification issued by China Classification Society (CCS)
C229	Marine product certification issued by Russian Maritime Register of Shipping (RS)
C255	Nickel plated busbars
D150	Brake choppers
E200	EMC filter for 2nd environment TN (grounded) system, category C3
E201	EMC filter for 2nd environment IT (ungrounded) system, category C3 The category is C4 for 230 V, 400 V, 440 V and 500 V frames R1R5, and for 690 V frames R3, R5 and R6.
E202	EMC filter for 1st environment TN (grounded) system, category C2
E208	Common mode filter
H358	Cable conduit entry (US/UK)
0J400	No control panel
J425	ACS-AP-I control panel
J461	ACS-DCP-11 drive connectivity panel (EU variant)

Code	Description					
K451	FDNA-01 DeviceNet™ adapter module					
K454	FPBA-01 PROFIBUS DP adapter module					
K457	FCAN-01 CANopen adapter module					
K458	FSCA-01 RS-485 (Modbus/RTU) adapter module					
K462	FCNA-01 ControlNet™ adapter module					
K469	FECA-01 EtherCat adapter module					
K470	FEPL-02 EtherPOWERLINK adapter module					
K475	FENA-21 Ethernet adapter module for EtherNet/IP™, Modbus TCP and PROFINET IO protocols, 2-port					
K490	FEIP-21 EtherNet/IP adapter module					
K491	FMBT-21 Modbus/TCP adapter module					
K492	FPNO-21 PROFINET IO adapter module					
L500	FIO-11 analog I/O extension module (1, 2 or 3 pcs)					
L501	FIO-01 digital I/O extension module					
L502	FEN-31 HTL incremental encoder interface module					
L503	FDCO-01 optical DDCS communication adapter module					
L508	FDCO-02 optical DDCS communication adapter module					
L516	FEN-21 resolver interface module					
L517	FEN-01 TTL incremental encoder interface module					
L518	FEN-11 TTL absolute encoder interface module					
L521	FSE-31 pulse encoder interface module					
L525	FAIO-01 analog I/O extension module					
L526	FDIO-01 digital I/O extension module					
L536	FPTC-01 thermistor protection module					
L537	FPTC-02 ATEX-certified thermistor protection module					

40 Operation principle and hardware description

Code	Description
N5000	Winder control program
N5050	Crane control program
N5100	Winch control program
N5150	Centrifuge control program
N5200	PCP (Progressive Cavity Pump) control program
N5250	Rod pump control program
N5300	Test bench control program
N5350	Cooling tower control program
N5450	Override control program
N5500	Spinning and traverse control program
N5600	ESP (Electrical Submersible Pump) control program
N5650	Tower crane control program
N5700	Position control program
N5900	Anti-cavitation control program
N7500	High-speed control firmware. High-speed operation above 598 Hz output frequency.
N7502	Control program for synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM)
N8010	Drive application programming
N8200	Dual-use license for an operating range of 600 Hz and more
P904	Extended warranty (24 months from commissioning or 30 months from delivery)
P909	Extended warranty (36 months from commissioning or 42 months from delivery)
P911	Extended warranty (60 months from commissioning or 66 months from delivery)
P912	Seaworthy packaging
P918	United States Country of Origin

Code	Description		
P940	Version for cabinet mounting (Drive without front cover and cable box. Includes panel holder, cable between panel holder and control unit, I/O clamp kit in frames R1R5, main cable clamp kit in frames R1R5, power cable shield grounding shelf in frames R6R9. Cannot be selected with P944.)		
P944	Version for cabinet mounting (drive module with front covers but without cable box)		
P952	European Union Country of Origin		
P968	Corrosion resistant variant		
Q971	ATEX-certified safe disconnection function		
Q972	FSO-21 safety functions module		
Q973	FSO-12 safety functions module		
Q982	PROFIsafe with FSO-xx safety function module and FPNO-21 PROFInet adapter or FENA-21 Ethernet adapter module		
Q986	PROFIsafe safety functions module, FSPS-21		
Q989	CIP Safety™ functions module, FSCS-21		
R700	Printed manuals in English		
R701	Printed manuals in German ¹⁾		
R702	Printed manuals in Italian ¹⁾		
R703	Printed manuals in Dutch ¹⁾		
R704	Printed manuals in Danish ¹⁾		
R705	Printed manuals in Swedish ¹⁾		
R706	Printed manuals in Finnish ¹⁾		
R707	Printed manuals in French ¹⁾		
R708	Printed manuals in Spanish ¹⁾		
R709	Printed manuals in Portuguese ¹⁾		
R711	Printed manuals in Russian ¹⁾		

42 Operation principle and hardware description

Code	Description
R712	Printed manuals in Chinese ¹⁾
R713	Printed manuals in Polish ¹⁾
R714	Printed manuals in Turkish ¹⁾
V998	UCU-20 control unit

¹⁾ Manuals in English may be included if a translation in the specified language is not available.

Note: Option codes R700...R714 denote full set of printed manuals in the selected language. The delivery can include manuals in English if the requested language is not available.

Mechanical installation

Contents of this chapter

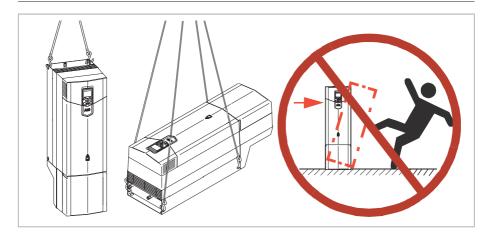
This chapter tells you how to examine the installation site, examine the delivery, and mechanically install the drive.

Safety

For frame sizes R4 to R9:



AWARNING Use the lifting eyes of the drive when you lift the drive. Do not tilt the drive. The drive is heavy and its center of gravity is high. If the drive falls, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.





Mounting positions

There are three alternative ways to install the drive:

- vertically alone. Do not install the drive upside down.
- vertically side by side. UL Type 12 frames R4 to R9 need 100 mm (4 in) between the hoods.

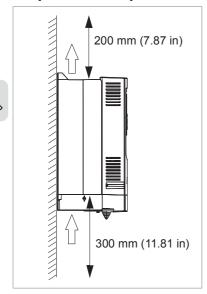
Note: Mounting the drives right next to each other side to side can make it difficult to read the serial number and rating information on the type designation label.

horizontally alone, IP21 (UL Type 1) only.

Note: The vibration specification in the technical data may not be fulfilled.

Note: IP21 (UL Type 1) construction only meets IP20 (UL Type Open) in horizontal position.

Required free space



Examining the installation site

Examine the installation site. Make sure that:

 The installation site is sufficiently ventilated or cooled to remove heat from the drive. Refer to the technical data.



- The ambient conditions of the drive meet the specifications. Refer to the technical data.
- The material behind, above, and below the drive is non-flammable.
- The installation surface is as close to vertical as possible and strong enough to hold the drive.
- There is sufficient free space around the drive for cooling, maintenance work, and operation. Refer to the free space specifications for the drive.
- There are no sources of strong magnetic fields such as high-current single-core conductors or contactor coils near the drive. A strong magnetic field can cause interference or inaccuracy in the operation of the drive.

Necessary tools

To move a heavy drive, use a crane, forklift or pallet truck (examine the load capacity). To lift a heavy drive, use a lifting device.

To install the drive mechanically, make sure that you have these tools available:

- drill with suitable bits
- screwdriver set (Torx, Phillips, flat and/or Pozidriv, as necessary)
- torque wrench
- socket set, Hex key set (metric)
- tape measure, if you do not use the mounting template delivered with the drive.

Moving the drive

Move the drive in its transport package to the installation site.

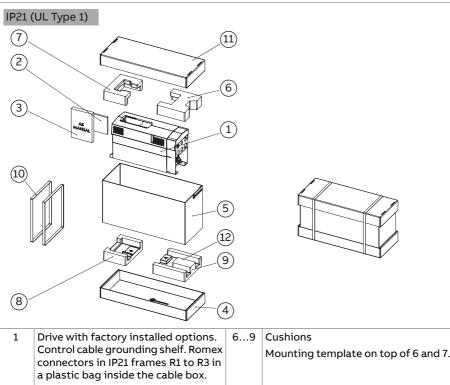
Unpacking and examining the delivery

Examining the delivery

Examine that all the items are present and there are no signs of damage. Read the data on the type designation label of the drive to make sure that the drive is of the correct type.



Package of frames R1...R4

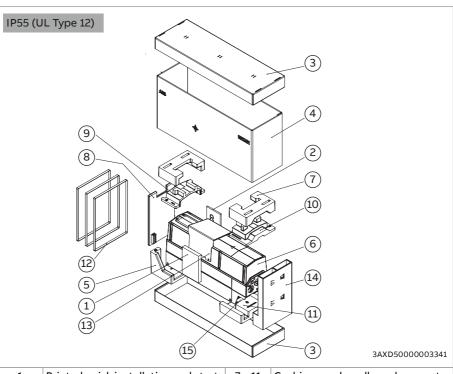




1	Drive with factory installed options. Control cable grounding shelf. Romex connectors in IP21 frames R1 to R3 in a plastic bag inside the cable box.	69	Cushions Mounting template on top of 6 and 7.			
2	-	10	Straps			
3	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual resid- ual voltage warning sticker	11	Top cardboard cover			
4	Cardboard tray	12	Vibration damper package (option +C131) Frame R4: below the cable box			
5	Cardboard sleeve	-	-			

- Cut the straps (10).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (11) and cushions (6...9).
- Lift the cardboard sleeve (5).
- · Lift the drive.

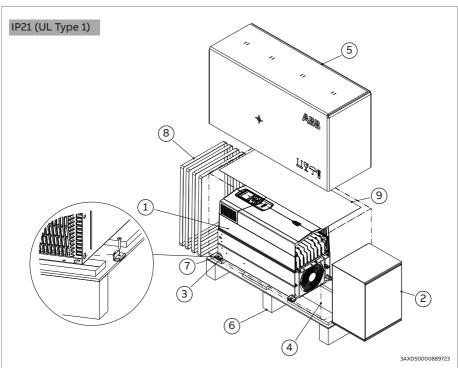




1	Printed quick installation and start- up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker	711	Cushions and cardboard support Mounting template on top of 7.
2	-	12	Straps
3	Cardboard tray + top cardboard cover	13	Hood included in frame R4. The hood is required only in UL Type 12 installations.
4	Cardboard sleeve	14	Support
5	Cushion	15	Vibration damper package (option +C131)
6	Drive with factory installed options. Control cable grounding shelf.	-	-

- Cut the straps (12).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (3) and cushions (5, 7...11).
- Lift the cardboard sleeve (4).
- · Lift the drive.

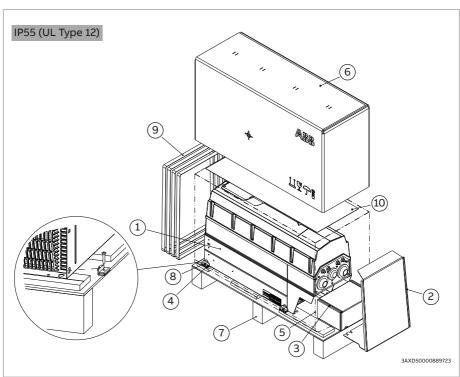
Package of frames R5 and R6





1	Drive with factory installed options	6	Pallet tray
2	Cable box. Power and control cable grounding shelves in a plastic bag, assembly drawing. IP21 (UL Type 1) frame R5: Vibration damper package (option +C131) inside the cable box.	7	Screw (4 pcs)
3	Packing bracket (4 pcs)	8	Straps
4	VCI bag	9	Mounting template
5	Cardboard cover	-	-

- Cut the straps (8).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (5) and VCI bag (4).
- Remove the screws (7) and packing brackets (3).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

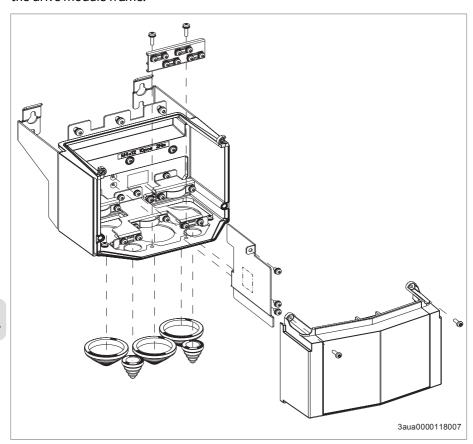


1	Drive with factory installed options	6	Cardboard cover
2	Hood (required only in UL Type 12 installation)	7	Pallet tray
3	Option box	8	Screw (4 pcs)
4	Packing bracket (4 pcs)	9	Straps
5	VCI bag	10	Mounting template

- Cut the straps (9).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (6) and VCI bag (5).
- Remove the screws (8) and packing brackets (4).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

Frame R5 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

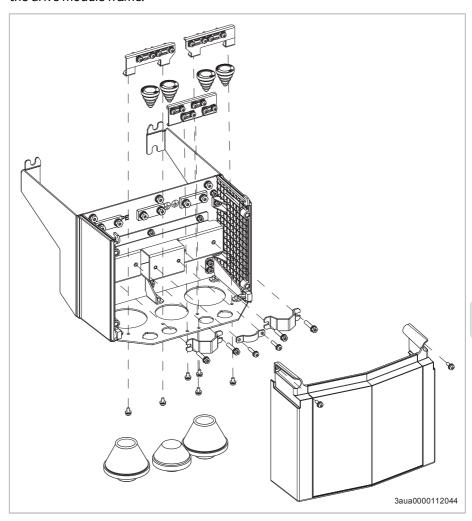
This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



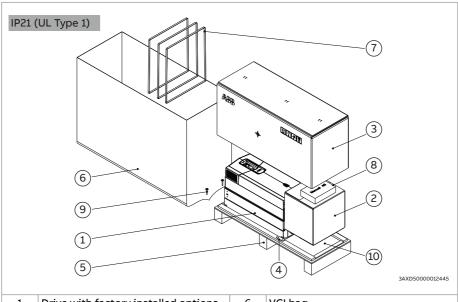


Frame R6 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



■ Package of frame R7



1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	VCI bag
2	Cable box. Power and control cable grounding shelves in a plastic bag, assembly drawing.	7	Straps
	Note: The cable entry box is mounted to the IP55 drive module frame at the factory		
3	Cardboard cover	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual resid- ual voltage warning sticker
4	Packing bracket	9	Screws
5	Pallet tray	10	Vibration damper package (option +C131)
			For frame R6: inside the cable box.

To unpack:

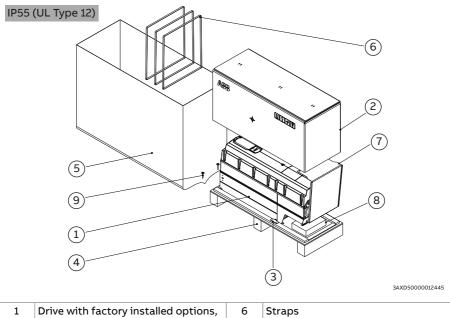
Cut the straps (7).

Remove the top cardboard cover (3) and VCI bag (6).

Remove the screws (9) and packing brackets (4).

Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.





1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	Straps
2	Cardboard cover	7	Hood (required only in UL Type 12 installation)
3	Packing bracket	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual resid- ual voltage warning sticker
4	Pallet tray	9	Screws
5	VCI bag	-	-

To unpack:

Cut the straps (6).

Remove the top cardboard cover (2) and VCI bag (5).

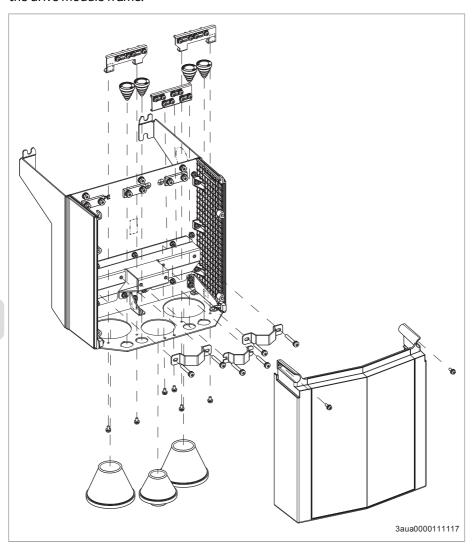
Remove the screws (9) and packing brackets (3).

Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.



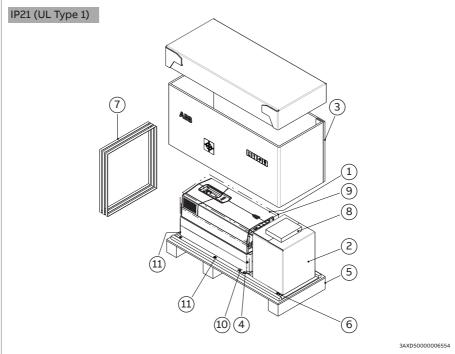
Frame R7 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



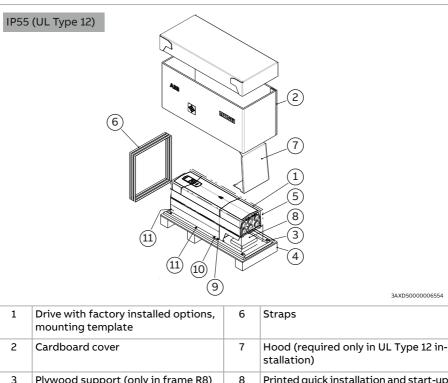


Package of frames R8 and R9



1	Drive with factory installed options, mounting template	6	Plywood support (only in frame R8)
2	Cable box. Power and control cable grounding shelves in a plastic bag, assembly drawing. Note: The cable entry box is mounted to the IP55 drive module frame at the factory	7	Straps
3	Cardboard cover	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual residual voltage warning sticker
4	Packing bracket	9	VCI bag
5	Pallet tray	10, 11	Screws

- Cut the straps (7).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (3) and VCI bag (9).
- Remove the screws (10, 11) and packing brackets (4).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.



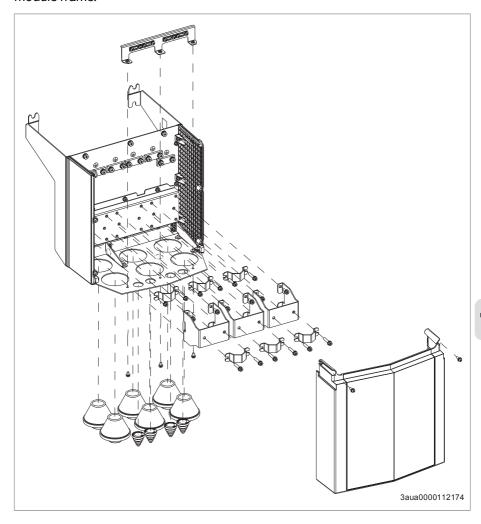


1	mounting template		σιαρο
2	Cardboard cover	7	Hood (required only in UL Type 12 installation)
3	Plywood support (only in frame R8)	8	Printed quick installation and start-up guide and manuals, multilingual resid- ual voltage warning sticker
4	Pallet tray	9	Packing bracket
5	VCI bag	10, 11	Screws

- Cut the straps (6).
- Remove the top cardboard cover (2) and VCI bag (5).
- Remove the screws (10, 11) and packing brackets (9).
- Attach lifting hooks to the lifting eyes of the drive. Lift the drive with a hoist.

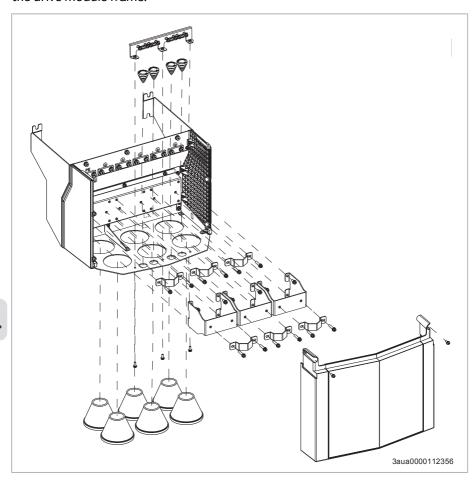
Frame R8 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. There is also an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.



Frame R9 cable box (IP21, UL Type 1)

This illustration shows the contents of the cable box package. The package also includes an assembly drawing which shows how to install the cable entry box to the drive module frame.





Installing the drive vertically

This section tells you how to install the drive on wall without vibration dampers.

Vibration dampers (option +C131)

Marine type approval (option +C132) requires the installation of vibration dampers for frames R4 to R9 in wall installations. Refer to Vibration dampers for ACS880-01 drives (frames R4 and R5, option +C131) installation guide (3AXD50000010497 [English]) or Vibration dampers for ACS880-01 drives (frames R6 to R9, option +C131) installation guide (3AXD50000013389 [English]). The guide is included in the vibration damper package.

Flange mounting (option +C135)

Name	Code (English)
ACS880-01+C135 drives with flange mounting kit supplement	3AXD50000349814
ACS880-01+C135 frames R1 to R3 flange mounting kit quick installation guide	3AXD50000026158
ACS880-01+C135 frames R4 to R5 flange mounting kit quick installation guide	3AXD50000026159
ACS880-01+C135, ACS580-01+C135, ACH580-01+C135 and ACQ580-01+C135 frames R6 to R9 flange mounting kit quick installation guide	3AXD50000019099

UK gland plate (option +H358)

Refer to ACS880-01, ACS580-01, ACH580-01, ACQ580-01 UK gland plate (+H358) installation guide (3AXD50000034735 [English]).

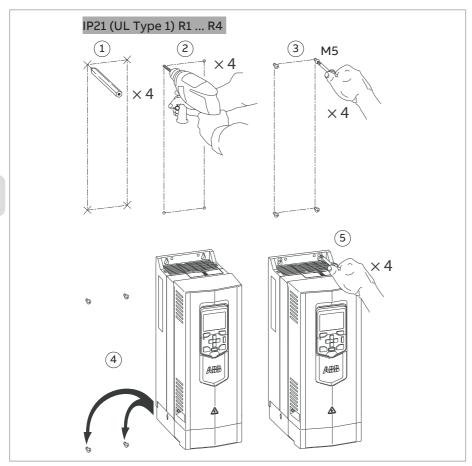
Cabinet installation (options +P940 and +P944)

Name	Code (English)
Drive modules cabinet design and construction instructions	3AUA0000107668
ACS880+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement	3AUA0000145446



Frames R1 to R4 (IP21, UL Type 1)

- 1. Refer to the dimensions in chapter Dimension drawings. Mark the locations for the four mounting holes. You can use the mounting template included in the drive package.
- 2. Drill the mounting holes.
- 3. Insert anchors or plugs into the holes and start the screws or bolts into the anchors or plugs. Install the screws or bolts long enough into the wall to make them carry the weight of the drive. Do not tighten the screws or bolts yet.
- 4. Position the drive onto the bolts on the wall.
- Tighten the bolts in the wall securely.

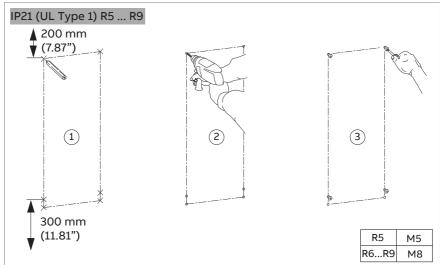




1. Refer to the dimensions in chapter Dimension drawings. Mark the locations for the four or six mounting holes. You can use the mounting template included in the drive package.

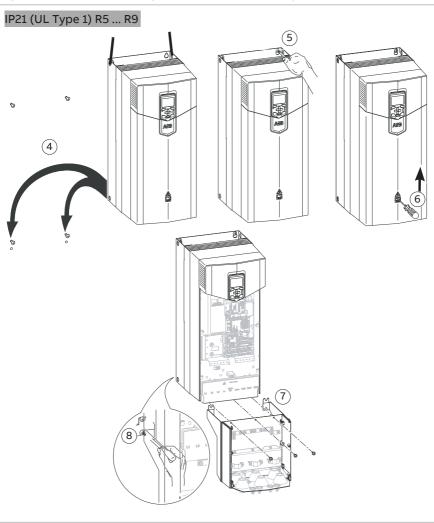
Note: The lowest mounting holes and screws or bolts are optional. If you use them, you can replace the drive module without removing the cable entry box from the wall.

- 2. Drill the mounting holes.
- Insert fixing anchors or plugs into the holes. Start the two top bolts and the two lower bolts into the anchors or plugs. Install the bolts long enough into the wall to make them carry the weight of the drive. Do not tighten the bolts yet.





- 4. Position the drive module onto the bolts on the wall.
- 5. Tighten the top mounting bolts in the wall securely.
- 6. Remove the front cover.
- 7. Attach the cable box to the drive frame. For instructions, refer to the assembly drawing in the cable box. A view of frame R8 is shown below.
- 8. Tighten the lower mounting bolts in the wall securely.

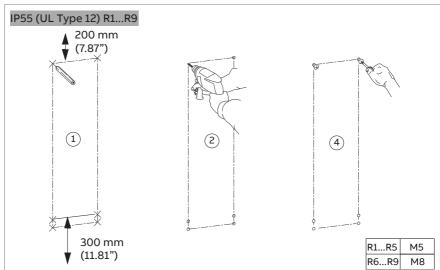




Frames R1 to R9 (IP55, UL Type 12)

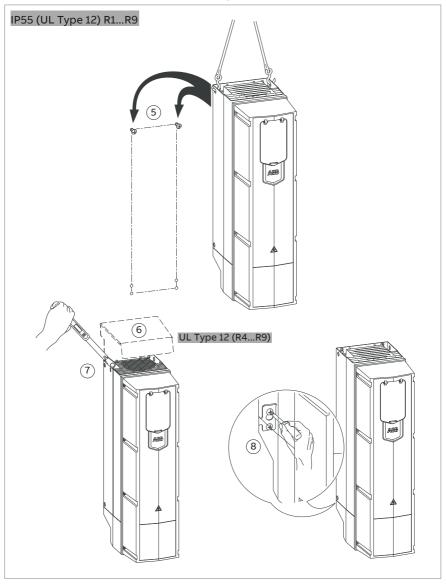
Note: Do not open or remove the cable box for easier installation. If you open the cable box, the gaskets do not comply with the degree of protection.

- Refer to the dimensions in chapter Dimension drawings. Mark the locations for the four or six mounting holes. The lowest holes are optional. You can use the mounting template included in the drive package.
- 2. Drill the mounting holes.
- 3. Insert fixing anchors or plugs into the holes.
- 4. Start the top bolts into the mounting holes. Install the bolts long enough into the wall to make them carry the weight of the drive. Do not tighten the bolts yet.





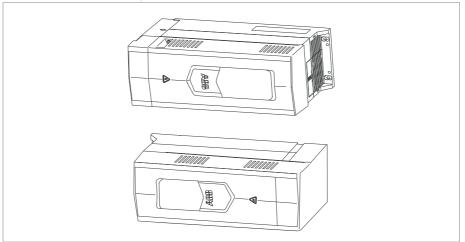
- 5. Position the drive onto the top bolts on the wall. Lift the drive with another person because it is heavy.
- 6. For UL Type 12 drives of frames R4 to R9: Put the hood onto the top bolts.
- 7. Tighten the top bolts in the wall securely.
- 8. Install the lower bolts into the mounting holes.





Installing the drive horizontally

You can install the drive with either the left or right side up. Do the steps in section Installing the drive vertically (page 59). For free space requirements, refer to Free space requirements (page 262).







Guidelines for planning the electrical installation

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains guidelines for planning the electrical installation of the drive.

Limitation of liability

The installation must always be designed and made according to applicable local laws and regulations. ABB does not assume any liability whatsoever for any installation which breaches the local laws and/or other regulations. Furthermore, if the recommendations given by ABB are not followed, the drive may experience problems that the warranty does not cover.

North America

Installations must be compliant with NFPA 70 (NEC) $^{1)}$ and/or Canadian Electrical Code (CE) along with state and local codes for your location and application.

1) National Fire Protection Association 70 (National Electric Code).

Selecting the main supply disconnecting device

You must equip the drive with a main supply disconnecting device which meets the local safety regulations. You must be able to lock the disconnecting device to the open position for installation and maintenance work.

To comply with European Union directives and United Kingdom regulations related to standard EN 60204-1, the disconnecting device must be one of these types:

- switch-disconnector of utilization category AC-23B (IEC 60947-3)
- disconnector that has an auxiliary contact that in all cases causes switching devices to break the load circuit before the opening of the main contacts of the disconnector (EN 60947-3)
- circuit-breaker suitable for isolation in accordance with IEC 60947-2.

Selecting the main contactor

You can equip the drive with a main contactor.

Follow these guidelines when you select a customer-defined main contactor:

- Dimension the contactor according to the nominal voltage and current of the drive. Also consider the environmental conditions such as surrounding air temperature.
- <u>IEC installations:</u> Select contactor with utilization category AC-1 (number of operations under load) according to IEC 60947-4.
- Consider the application life time requirements.

Examining the compatibility of the motor and drive

Use asynchronous AC induction motors, permanent magnet synchronous motors, AC induction servomotors or ABB synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM motors) with the drive.

Select the motor size and drive type from the rating table on basis of the AC line voltage and motor load. You can find the rating table in the appropriate hardware manual. You can also use the DriveSize PC tool.

Make sure that the motor can be used with an AC drive. See Requirements tables (page 69). For basics of protecting the motor insulation and bearings in drive systems, see Protecting the motor insulation and bearings (page 68).

Note:

- Consult the motor manufacturer before using a motor with nominal voltage that differs from the AC line voltage connected to the drive input.
- The voltage peaks at the motor terminals are relative to the supply voltage of the drive, not to the drive output voltage.

Protecting the motor insulation and bearings

The drive employs modern IGBT inverter technology. Regardless of frequency, the drive output comprises pulses of approximately the drive DC bus voltage with a very short rise time. The pulse voltage can almost double at the motor terminals,

depending on the attenuation and reflection properties of the motor cable and the terminals. This can cause additional stress on the motor and motor cable insulation.

Modern variable speed drives with their fast rising voltage pulses and high switching frequencies can generate current pulses that flow through the motor bearings. This can gradually erode the bearing races and rolling elements.

du/dt filters protect motor insulation system and reduce bearing currents. Common mode filters mainly reduce bearing currents. Insulated N-end (non-drive end) bearings protect the motor bearings.

Requirements tables

These tables show how to select the motor insulation system and when a drive du/dt and common mode filters and insulated N-end (non-drive end) motor bearings are required. Ignoring the requirements or improper installation may shorten motor life or damage the motor bearings and voids the warranty.

Requirements for ABB motors, $P_{\rm n}$ < 100 kW (134 hp)

See also Abbreviations (page 74).

Motor type	Nominal AC line voltage	Requirement for		
		Motor insulation sys-	ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings $P_{\rm n}$ < 100 kW and frame size < IEC 315	
		tem		
			P _n < 134 hp and frame size < NEMA 500	
Random-wound	<i>U</i> _n ≤ 500 V	Standard	-	
M2_, M3_ and M4	500 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 600 V	Standard	+ du/dt	
_		Reinforced	-	
	600 V < U _n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced (+405 spe- cial insula- tion)	_1)	
Form-wound HX_ and AM_	380 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	Standard	N/A	
Old ²⁾ form- wound HX_ and modular	380 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	Check with the motor manufac- turer.	+ N + du/dt with voltages over 500 V + CMF	
Random-wound	0 V < U _n ≤ 500 V	Enamelled	+ N + CMF	
HX_ and AM_ ³⁾	500 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	wire with fiber glass taping	+ N + du/dt + CMF	
HDP	Consult the moto	otor manufacturer.		

 $^{^{1)}}$ Not applicable to motors for explosive atmospheres. Refer to Low voltage Motors for explosive atmospheres catalog.

²⁾ manufactured before 1.1.1998

 $[\]textbf{3)} \ \ \text{For motors manufactured before 1.1.1998, check for additional instructions with the motor manufacturer.}$

Requirements for ABB motors, $P_n \ge 100 \text{ kW}$ (134 hp)

See also Abbreviations (page 74).

Motor type	Nominal AC line voltage	Requirement for			
		Motor insulation system	ABB d u/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings		
			100 kW ≤ P _n < 350 kW or IEC 315 ≤ frame size < IEC 400	P _n ≥ 350 kW or frame size ≥ IEC 400	
			134 hp ≤ P_n < 469 hp or NEMA 500 ≤ frame size ≤ NEMA 580	P _n ≥ 469 hp or frame size > NEMA 580	
Random-wound	<i>U</i> _n ≤ 500 V	Standard	+ N	+ N + CMF	
M2_, M3_ and M4_	500 V < U _n ≤ 600 V	Standard	+ N + d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i>	+ N + d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + CMF	
_		Reinforced	+ N	+ N + CMF	
	600 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced (+405 spe- cial insula- tion)	+ N ¹⁾	+ N + CMF ¹⁾	
Form-wound HX_ and AM_	380 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	Standard	+ N + CMF	P _n < 500 kW: +N + CMF	
				$P_n \ge 500 \text{ kW: +N +}$ du/dt + CMF	
Old ²⁾ form- wound HX_ and modular	380 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	Check with the motor manufac- turer.	'	oltages over 500 V + MF	
Random-wound	0 V < U _n ≤ 500 V	wire with			CMF
HX_ and AM_ ³⁾	500 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V		+ N + du/dt + CMF		
HDP	Consult the motor manufacturer.				

 $^{^{1)}}$ Not applicable to motors for explosive atmospheres. Refer to Low voltage Motors for explosive atmospheres catalog.

²⁾ manufactured before 1.1.1998

³⁾ For motors manufactured before 1.1.1998, check for additional instructions with the motor manufacturer.

Requirements for non-ABB motors, $P_{\rm n}$ < 100 kW (134 hp)

See also Abbreviations (page 74).

Motor type	Nominal AC line voltage	Requirement for		
		Motor insu- lation sys- tem	ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings $P_{\rm n}$ < 100 kW and frame size < IEC 315	
			P _n < 134 hp and frame size < NEMA 500	
Random-wound and form-wound	<i>U</i> _n ≤ 420 V	Standard: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1300 V	-	
	420 V < U _n ≤ 500 V 500 V < U _n ≤ 600 V	Standard: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1300 V	+ du/dt	
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1600 V, 0.2 μs rise time	-	
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1600 V	+ du/dt	
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1800 V	-	
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1800 V	+ du/dt	
		Reinforced: $\hat{U}_{LL} = 2000 \text{ V},$ 0.3 $\mu \text{s rise time}^{1)}$	-	

¹⁾ If the intermediate DC circuit voltage of the drive is increased from the nominal level due to long term resistor braking cycles, check with the motor manufacturer if additional output filters are needed.

Requirements for non-ABB motors, $P_n \ge 100 \text{ kW}$ (134 hp)

See also Abbreviations (page 74).

Motor type	Nominal AC line		Requirement for	
		Motor insulation sys-	ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings	
		tem	100 kW ≤ P _n < 350 kW or IEC 315 ≤ frame size < IEC 400	P _n ≥ 350 kW or frame size ≥ IEC 400
			134 hp ≤ <i>P</i> _n < 469 hp or NEMA 500 ≤ frame size ≤ NEMA 580	P _n ≥ 469 hp or frame size > NEMA 580
Random-wound and form-wound	<i>U</i> _n ≤ 420 V	Standard: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1300 V	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
	420 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 500 V	Standard: Û _{LL} = 1300 V	+ du/dt + (N or CMF)	+ N + d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + CMF
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1600 V, 0.2 μs rise time	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
	500 V < U _n ≤ 600 V	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1600 V	+ du/dt + (N or CMF)	+ N + d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + CMF
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1800 V	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
	600 V < U _n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1800 V	+ d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + N	+ N + d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + CMF
		Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 2000 V, 0.3 μs rise time 1)	+ N + CMF	+ N + CMF

¹⁾ If the intermediate DC circuit voltage of the drive is increased from the nominal level due to long term resistor braking cycles, check with the motor manufacturer if additional output filters are needed.

Abbreviations

Abbr.	Definition
U _n	Nominal AC line voltage
$\hat{\mathcal{U}}_{LL}$	Peak line-to-line voltage at motor terminals which the motor insulation must withstand
P _n	Motor nominal power
du/dt	du/dt filter at the output of the drive
CMF	Common mode filter of the drive
N	N-end bearing: insulated motor non-drive end bearing
n.a.	Motors of this power range are not available as standard units. Consult the motor manufacturer.

Availability of du/dt filter and common mode filter by drive type

Product type	Availability of du/dt filter	Availability of common mode filter (CMF)
ACS880-01	Ordered separtely, see chapter Filters (page 351)	Plus code option +E208

Additional requirements for explosion-safe (EX) motors

If you use an explosion-safe (EX) motor, obey the rules in the requirements table above. In addition, consult the motor manufacturer for any further requirements.

Additional requirements for ABB motors of types other than M2_, M3_, M4_, HX_ and AM $\,$

Use the selection criteria given for non-ABB motors.

Additional requirements for braking applications

When the motor brakes the machinery, the intermediate circuit DC voltage of the drive increases, the effect being similar to the motor supply voltage increasing by up to 20 percent. Consider this voltage increase when specifying the motor insulation requirements if the motor will be braking a large part of its operation time.

Example: Motor insulation requirement for a 400 V AC line voltage application must be selected as if the drive were supplied with 480 V.

Additional requirements for ABB high-output and IP23 motors

The rated output power of high output motors is higher than what is stated for the particular frame size in EN 50347 (2001).

This table shows the requirements for protecting the motor insulation and bearings in drive systems for ABB random-wound motor series (for example, M3AA, M3AP and M3BP).

Nominal AC sup-	Requirement for				
motor insulation ABB du system		ABB du/dt and c	B d u /d t and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings		
		P _n < 100 kW	100 kW ≤ P _n < 200 kW	<i>P</i> _n ≥ 200 kW	
		<i>P</i> _n < 140 hp	140 hp ≤ P _n < 268 hp	<i>P</i> _n ≥ 268 hp	
<i>U</i> _n ≤ 500 V	Standard	-	+ N	+ N + CMF	
500 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 600 V	Standard	+ du/dt	+ du/dt + N	+ d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + N + CMF	
	Reinforced	-	+ N	+ N + CMF	
600 V < <i>U</i> _n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced	+ du/dt	+ du/dt + N	+ d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + N + CMF	

Additional requirements for non-ABB high-output and IP23 motors

The rated output power of high-output motors is higher than what is stated for the particular frame size in EN 50347 (2001).

If you plan to use a non-ABB high-output motor or an IP23 motor, consider these additional requirements for protecting the motor insulation and bearings in drive systems:

- If motor power is below 350 kW: Equip the drive and/or motor with the filters and/or bearings according to the table below.
- If motor power is above 350 kW: Consult the motor manufacturer.

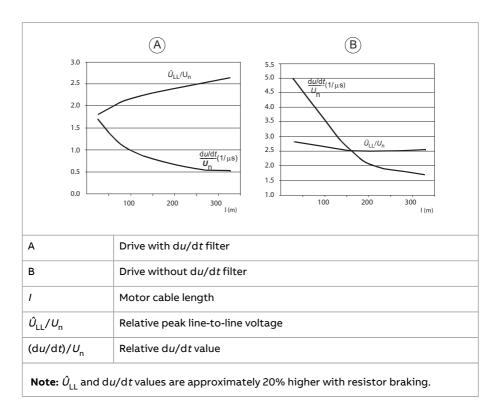
Nominal AC supply voltage	Requirement for		
voitage	Motor insulation sys- tem	ABB du/dt and common mode filters, insulated N-end motor bearings	
		P _n < 100 kW or frame size < IEC 315	100 kW < P _n < 350 kW or
			IEC 315 < frame size < IEC 400
		P _n < 134 hp or frame size < NEMA 500	134 hp < P _n < 469 hp or
			NEMA 500 < frame size < NEMA 580
<i>U</i> _n ≤ 420 V	Standard: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1300 V	+ N or CMF	+ N or CMF
420 V < U _n < 500 V	Standard: Û _{LL} = 1300 V	+ d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> + (N or CMF)	+ N + du/dt + CMF
	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1600 V, 0.2 microsecond rise time	+ N or CMF	+ N or CMF
500 V < U _n ≤ 600 V	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1600 V	+ du/dt + (N or CMF)	+ N + du/dt + CMF
	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1800 V	+ N or CMF	+ N + CMF
600 V < U _n ≤ 690 V	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 1800 V	+ N + d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i>	+ N + du/dt + CMF
	Reinforced: \hat{U}_{LL} = 2000 V, 0.3 microsecond rise time 1)	+ N + CMF	+ N + CMF

¹⁾ If the intermediate DC circuit voltage of the drive is increased from the nominal level due to long term resistor braking cycles, check with the motor manufacturer if additional output filters are needed.

Additional data for calculating the rise time and the peak line-to-line voltage

The diagrams below show the relative peak line-to-line voltage and rate of change of voltage as a function of the motor cable length. If you need to calculate the actual peak voltage and voltage rise time considering the actual cable length, proceed as follows:

- Peak line-to line voltage: Read the relative \hat{U}_{LL}/U_n value from the diagram below and multiply it by the nominal supply voltage (U_n) .
- Voltage rise time: Read the relative values \hat{U}_{LL}/U_n and $(du/dt)/U_n$ from the diagram below. Multiply the values by the nominal supply voltage (U_n) and substitute into equation $t = 0.8 \cdot \hat{U}_{LL}/(du/dt)$.



Additional note for sine filters

A sine filter also protects the motor insulation system. The peak phase-to-phase voltage with a sine filter is approximately 1.5 \cdot $U_{\rm n}$.

Selecting the power cables

General guidelines

Select the input power and motor cables according to local regulations.

- Current: Select a cable capable of carrying the maximum load current and suitable for the prospective short-circuit current provided by the supply network. The method of installation and ambient temperature affect the cable current carrying capacity. Obey local regulations and laws.
- Temperature: For an IEC installation, select a cable rated for at least 70 °C (158 °F) maximum permissible temperature of conductor in continuous use. For North America, select a cable rated for at least 75 °C (167 °F).
 Important: For certain product types or option configurations higher temperature rating may be required. See the technical data for details.
- Voltage: 600 V AC cable is accepted for up to 500 V AC. 750 V AC cable is accepted for up to 600 V AC. 1000 V AC cable is accepted for up to 690 V AC.

To comply with the EMC requirements of the CE mark, use one of the preferred cable types. See Preferred power cable types (page 79).

Symmetrical shielded cable reduces electromagnetic emission of the whole drive system as well as the stress on motor insulation, bearing currents and wear.

Metal conduit reduces electromagnetic emission of the whole drive system.

Typical power cable sizes

See the technical data in the appropriate hardware manual.

Power cable types

Preferred power cable types

This section shows the preferred cable types. Make sure that the selected cable type also complies with local/state/country electrical codes.

Cable type	Use as input power cabling	Use as motor cabling and as brake resistor cabling
Symmetrical shielded (or armored) cable with three phase conductors and concentric PE conductor as shield (or armor)	Yes	Yes
Symmetrical shielded (or armored) cable with three phase conductors and symmetrically constructed PE conductor and a shield (or armor)	Yes	Yes
Symmetrical shielded (or armored) cable with three phase conductors and a shield (or armor), and separate PE conductor/cable 1)	Yes	Yes

¹⁾ A separate PE conductor is required if the conductivity of the shield (or armor) is not sufficient for the PE use.

Alternate power cable types

Cable type	Use as input power cabling	Use as motor cabling and as brake resistor cabling
	Yes with phase conductor smaller than 10 mm² (8 AWG) Cu.	Yes with phase conductor smaller than 10 mm ² (8 AWG) Cu, or motors up to 30 kW (40 hp).
Four-conductor cable in plastic jacket (three phase conductors and PE)		Note: Shielded or armored cable, or cabling in metal conduit is always recommended to minimize radio frequency interference.
Four-conductor armored cable (three phase conductors and PE)	Yes	Yes with phase conductor smaller than 10 mm ² (8 AWG) Cu, or motors up to 30 kW (40 hp)
Shielded (Al/Cu shield or armor) 1) four-conductor cable (three phase conductors and a PE)	Yes	Yes with motors up to 100 kW (135 hp). A potential equalization between the frames of motor and driven equipment is required.

¹⁾ Armor may act as an EMC shield, as long as it provides the same performance as a concentric EMC shield of a shielded cable. To be effective at high frequencies, the shield conductivity must be at least 1/10 of the phase conductor conductivity. The effectiveness of the shield can be evaluated based on the shield inductance, which must be low and only slightly dependent on frequency. The requirements are easily met with a copper or aluminum shield/armor. The cross-section of a steel shield must be ample and the shield helix must have a low gradient. A galvanized steel shield has a better high-frequency conductivity than a non-galvanized steel shield.

Not allowed power cable types

Cable type	Use as input power cabling	Use as motor cabling and as brake resistor cabling
PE	No	No
Symmetrical shielded cable with individual shields for each phase conductor		

Additional guidelines - North America

ABB recommends the use of metallic conduit for power wiring. ABB also recommends the use of symmetrical shielded VFD cable between drive and motor(s).

This table shows examples of methods for wiring the drive. Refer to NFPA 70 (NEC) along with state and local codes for the appropriate methods for your application.

Wiring method	Notes		
Conduit - Metallic ^{1) 2)}			
Electrical metallic tubing: Type EMT	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable.		
Rigid metal conduit: Type RMC	Use separate conduit run for each motor.		
Liquid-tight flexible metal electrical conduit: Type LFMC	Do not run input power wiring and motor wiring in the same conduit.		
Conduit - Non-metallic ^{2) 3)}			
	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable.		
Liquid-tight flexible non-metallic conduit:	Use separate conduit run for each motor.		
Type LFNC	Do not run input power wiring and motor wiring in the same conduit.		
Wireways ²⁾			
	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable.		
Metallic	Separate motor wiring from input power wiring and other low voltage wiring.		
rietaine	Do not run outputs of multiple drives parallel. Bundle each cable (wiring) together and use separators where possible.		

Wiring method	Notes
Free air ²⁾	
Enclosures, air handlers, etc.	Prefer symmetrical shielded VFD cable. Allowed internally in enclosures when in accordance with UL.

¹⁾ Metallic conduit may be used as an additional ground path, provided this path is a solid path capable of handling ground currents.

Metal conduit

Couple separate parts of a metal conduit together: bridge the joints with a ground conductor bonded to the conduit on each side of the joint. Also bond the conduits to the drive enclosure and motor frame. Use separate conduits for input power, motor, brake resistor, and control wiring. Do not run motor wiring from more than one drive in the same conduit.

Power cable shield

If the cable shield is used as the sole protective earth (PE) conductor, make sure that its conductivity agrees with the PE conductor requirements.

To effectively suppress radiated and conducted radio-frequency emissions, the cable shield conductivity must be at least 1/10 of the phase conductor conductivity. The requirements are easily met with a copper or aluminum shield. The minimum requirement of the motor cable shield of the drive is shown below. It consists of a concentric layer of copper wires with an open helix of copper tape or copper wire. The better and tighter the shield, the lower the emission level and bearing currents.

²⁾ See NFPA NFPA 70 (NEC), UL, and local codes for your application.

³⁾ Non-metallic conduit use underground is allowed; however, these installations inherently have an increased chance for nuisance problems due to the potential for water/moisture in the conduit. Water/moisture in the conduit increases the likelihood of VFD faults or warnings. Proper installation is required to make sure there is no intrusion of water/moisture.

1	Insulation jacket
2	Helix of copper tape or copper wire
3	Copper wire shield
4	Inner insulation
5	Cable core

Grounding requirements

This section gives general requirements for grounding the drive. When you plan the grounding of the drive, obey all the applicable national and local regulations.

The conductivity of the protective earth conductor(s) must be sufficient.

Unless local wiring regulations state otherwise, the cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor must agree with the conditions that require automatic disconnection of the supply required in 411.3.2 of IEC 60364-4-41:2005 and be capable of withstanding the prospective fault current during the disconnection time of the protective device. The cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor must be selected from the table below or calculated according to 543.1 of IEC 60364-5-54.

The table shows the minimum cross-sectional area of the protective earth conductor related to the phase conductor size according to IEC/UL 61800-5-1 when the phase conductor(s) and the protective earth conductor are made of the same metal. If they are different metals, the cross-sectional area of the protective

earth conductor must be determined in a manner which produces a conductance equivalent to that which results from the application of this table.

Cross-sectional area of the phase conduct- ors S (mm²)	Minimum cross-sectional area of the corresponding protective earth conductor S_p (mm²)
S ≤ 16	S ¹⁾
16 < S ≤ 35	16
35 < S	S/2

¹⁾ For the minimum conductor size in IEC installations, refer to Additional grounding requirements – IEC (page 84).

If the protective earth conductor is not part of the input power cable or input power cable enclosure, the minimum permitted cross-sectional area is:

- 2.5 mm² if the conductor is mechanically protected, or
- 4 mm² if the conductor is not mechanically protected. If the equipment is cord-connected, the protective earth conductor must be the last conductor to be interrupted if there is a failure in the strain relief mechanism.

Additional grounding requirements – IEC

This section gives grounding requirements according to standard IEC/EN 61800-5-1.

Because the normal touch current of the drive is more than 3.5 mA AC or 10 mA DC:

- the minimum size of the protective earth conductor must comply with the local safety regulations for high protective earth conductor current equipment, and
- you must use one of these connection methods:
 - a fixed connection and:
 - a protective earth conductor with a minimum cross-sectional area of 10 mm² Cu or 16 mm² Al (as an alternative when aluminum cables are permitted),

or

 a second protective earth conductor of the same cross-sectional area as the original protective earth conductor,

 a device that automatically disconnects the supply if the protective earth conductor is damaged. 2. a connection with an industrial connector according to IEC 60309 and a minimum protective earth conductor cross-section of 2.5 mm² as part of a multi-conductor power cable. Sufficient strain relief must be provided.

If the protective earth conductor is routed through a plug and socket, or similar means of disconnection, it must not be possible to disconnect it unless power is simultaneously removed.

Note: You can use power cable shields as protective earth conductors only when their conductivity is sufficient.

Additional grounding requirements – UL (NEC)

This section gives grounding requirements according to standard UL 61800-5-1.

The protective earth conductor must be sized as specified in Article 250.122 and table 250.122 of the National Electric Code, ANSI/NFPA 70.

For cord-connected equipment, it must not be possible to disconnect the protective earth conductor before power is removed.

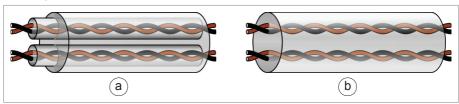
Selecting the control cables

Shielding

Only use shielded control cables.

Use a double-shielded twisted pair cable for analog signals. ABB recommends this type of cable also for the pulse encoder signals. Use one individually shielded pair for each signal. Do not use common return for different analog signals.

A double-shielded cable (a) is the best alternative for low-voltage digital signals, but single-shielded (b) twisted pair cable is also acceptable.



Signals in separate cables

Run analog and digital signals in separate, shielded cables. Do not mix $24\ V\ DC$ and $115/230\ V\ AC$ signals in the same cable.

Signals that can be run in the same cable

If their voltage does not exceed 48 V, relay-controlled signals can be run in the same cables as digital input signals. The relay-controlled signals should be run as twisted pairs.

Relay cable

The cable type with braided metallic shield (for example ÖLFLEX by LAPPKABEL, Germany) has been tested and approved by ABB.

Control panel to drive cable

Use EIA-485, Cat 5e (or better) cable with male RJ45 connectors. The maximum length of the cable is 100 m (328 ft).

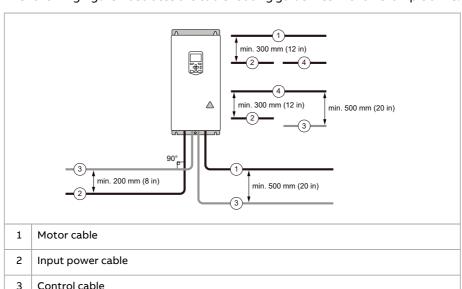
PC tool cable

Connect the Drive Composer PC tool to the drive through the USB port of the control panel. Use a USB Type A (PC) - Type Mini-B (control panel) cable. The maximum length of the cable is 3 m (9.8 ft).

Routing the cables

General guidelines – IEC

- Route the motor cable away from other cables. Motor cables of several drives can be run in parallel installed next to each other.
- Install the motor cable, input power cable and control cables on separate trays.
- Avoid long parallel runs of motor cables with other cables.
- Where control cables must cross power cables, make sure that they are arranged at an angle as near to 90 degrees as possible.
- Do not run extra cables through the drive.
- Make sure that the cable trays have good electrical bonding to each other and to the grounding electrodes. Aluminum tray systems can be used to improve local equalizing of potential.



The following figure illustrates the cable routing guidelines with an example drive.

■ General guidelines – North America

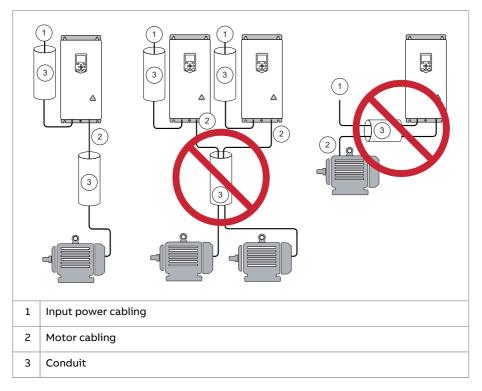
Brake resistor or chopper cable (if any)

3

Make sure that the installation is in accordance with national and local codes. Obey these general guidelines:

- Use separate conduits for the input power, motor, brake resistor (optional), and control cabling.
- Use separate conduit for each motor cabling.

The following figure illustrates the cable routing guidelines with an example drive.



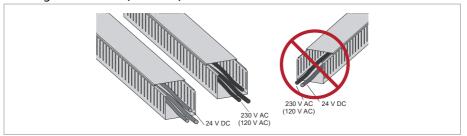
Continuous motor cable shield/conduit and metal enclosure for equipment on the motor cable

To minimize the emission level when safety switches, contactors, connection boxes or similar equipment are installed on the motor cable between the drive and the motor:

- · Install the equipment in a metal enclosure.
- Use either a symmetrical shielded cable, or install the cabling in a metal conduit.
- Make sure that there is a good and continuous galvanic connection in the shield/conduit between drive and motor.
- Connect the shield/conduit to the protective ground terminal of the drive and the motor.

Separate control cable ducts

Put 24 V DC and 230 V AC (120 V AC) control cables in separate ducts, unless the 24 V DC cable is insulated for 230 V AC (120 V AC) or insulated with an insulation sleeving for 230 V AC (120 V AC).



Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection

Protecting the drive and the input power cable in short-circuits

Protect the drive and the input cable with fuses or a circuit breaker.



Select the fuses or circuit breakers according to local regulations for the input cable protection. Select the fuses or circuit breakers for the drive according to the instructions given in the technical data. The fuses or circuit breakers for the drive protection will restrict drive damage and prevent damage to adjoining equipment in case of a short-circuit inside the drive.

Note: If the fuses or circuit breakers for the drive protection are placed at the distribution board and the input cable is selected according to the nominal input current of the drive given in the technical data, the fuses or circuit breakers protect also the input cable in short-circuit situations, restrict drive damage and prevent damage to adjoining equipment in case of a short-circuit inside the drive. No separate fuses or circuit breakers for the input cable protection are required.



AWARNING Due to the inherent operating principle and construction of circuit breakers, independent of the manufacturer, hot ionized gases can escape from the breaker enclosure in case of a short-circuit. To make sure of safe use, pay special attention to the installation and placement of the breakers. Obey the manufacturer's instructions.

Protecting the motor and motor cable in short-circuits

The drive protects the motor cable and motor in a short-circuit situation when:

- · the motor cable is sized correctly
- the motor cable type complies with the motor cable selection guidelines by ABB
- the cable length does not exceed the allowed maximum length specified for the drive
- the setting of parameter 99.10 Motor nominal power in the drive is equal with the value given on the motor rating plate.

The electronic power output short-circuit protection circuitry meets the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41:2005 + AMD1:2017.

Protecting the drive against thermal overload

The drive has overload protection as standard.

Protecting the input power cable against thermal overload

The drive has overload protection as standard. If the sizing of the input power cable is correct, the drive overload protection protects also the cable against overload. In case of parallel input power cables, it may be necessary to protect each cable separately. Obey the local regulations.

Protecting the motor cables against thermal overload

The drive protects the motor cables against thermal overload when the cables are sized according to the nominal output current of the drive. No additional thermal protection devices are needed.



AWARNING If the drive is connected to multiple motors, use a separate overload protection for each motor cable and motor. The drive overload protection is tuned for the total motor load. It may not detect an overload in one motor circuit only.

North America: The local code (NEC) requires an overload protection and a short-circuit protection for each motor circuit. Use, for example:

- manual motor protector
- circuit breaker, contactor and overload relay or
- fuses, contactor and overload relay.

Protecting the motor against thermal overload

According to regulations, the motor must be protected against thermal overload and the current must be switched off when overload is detected. The drive includes a motor thermal protection function that protects the motor and switches off the current when necessary. Depending on a drive parameter value, the function either monitors a calculated temperature value (based on a motor thermal model) or an actual temperature indication given by motor temperature sensors.

The motor thermal protection model supports thermal memory retention and speed sensitivity. The user can tune the thermal model further by feeding in additional motor and load data.

The most common temperature sensor types are PTC or Pt100.

For more information, see the firmware manual.

■ Protecting the motor against overload without thermal model or temperature sensors

Motor overload protection protects the motor against overload without using motor thermal model or temperature sensors.

Motor overload protection is required and specified by multiple standards including the US National Electric Code (NEC) and the common UL/IEC 61800-5-1 standard in conjunction with UL/IEC 60947-4-1. The standards allow for motor overload protection without external temperature sensors.

The protection feature of the drive allows the user to specify the class of operation in the same manner as the overload relays are specified in standards UL/IEC 60947-4-1 and NEMA ICS 2.

The motor overload protection supports thermal memory retention and speed sensitivity.

For more information, see drive firmware manual.

Protecting the drive against ground faults

The drive is equipped with an internal ground fault protective function to protect the unit against ground faults in the motor and motor cable. This function is not a personnel safety or a fire protection feature. See the firmware manual for more information.

Residual current device compatibility

The drive is suitable for use with residual current devices of Type B.

Note: As standard, the drive contains capacitors connected between the main circuit and the frame. These capacitors and long motor cables increase the ground leakage current and may cause nuisance faults in residual current devices.

Connecting drives to a common DC system

See Common DC systems with ACS880-01, -04, -11, -14, -31 and -34 drives application guide (3AUA0000127818 [English]).

Implementing the emergency stop function

For safety reasons, install the emergency stop devices at each operator control station and at other operating stations where the emergency stop may be needed. Implement the emergency stop according to relevant standards.

Note: You can use the Safe torque off function of the drive to implement the Emergency stop function.

Implementing the Safe torque off function

See The Safe torque off function (page 327).

Implementing the functions provided by the FSO safety functions module

You can order the drive with an FSO-12 safety functions module or FSO-21 safety functions module. An FSO module enables the implementation of functions such as Safe brake control (SBC), Safe stop 1 (SS1), Safe stop emergency (SSE), Safely limited speed (SLS) and Safe maximum speed (SMS).

The settings of the FSO module have default values when delivered from the factory. The wiring of the external safety circuit and configuration of the FSO module are the responsibility of the user.

The FSO module reserves the standard Safe torque off (STO) connection of the drive (or inverter) control unit. STO can still be utilized by other safety circuits through the FSO module.

See the appropriate manual for more information.

Name	Code
FSO-12 safety functions module user's manual	3AXD50000015612
FSO-21 safety functions module user's manual	3AXD50000015614

Implementing the functions provided by the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module

You can order the drive with an FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module, which provides PROFINET and PROFIsafe connection to the drive and has two safety functions integrated into it: Safe torque off (STO) and Safe stop 1, time monitored

(SS1-t). With the module, it is possible to control the drive via PROFINET and safely stop the drive via PROFIsafe.

The Safe torque off function can be controlled with PROFIsafe. When using FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module, other safety functions are not available. Use of PROFIsafe and PROFINET is also possible by using FPNO-21 and FSO option modules.

The settings of the module have default values when delivered from the factory. The wiring and configuration of the FSPS-21 module are the responsibility of the user.

For more information, see FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000158638 [English]).

Implementing the functions provided by the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module

You can order the drive with FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module . The module has two safety functions integrated into it: Safe torque off (STO) and Safe stop 1, time monitored (SS1-t). With the module, you can connect a drive to an Ethernet network and a safety PLC. The module supports the CIP Safety™ communication technology through the EtherNet/IP communication protocol. The intended use of the FSCS module is to safely stop the drive when necessary. A safety PLC can activate the safety functions of the module.

The settings of the FSCS module have default values when delivered from the factory. The wiring and configuration of the FSCS module are the responsibility of the user. The FSCS module reserves the standard Safe torque off (STO) connection of the drive (or inverter) control unit.

For more information, refer to FSCS-21 CIP Safety[™] functions module user's manual (3AXD50001065478 [English]).

Implementing an ATEX-certified motor thermal protection

With option +Q971, the drive provides ATEX-certified safe motor disconnection without contactor using the drive Safe torque off function. To implement the thermal protection of a motor in explosive atmosphere (Ex motor), you must also:

- use an ATEX-certified Ex motor
- order an ATEX-certified thermistor protection module for the drive (option +L537), or acquire and install an ATEX-compliant protection relay
- do the necessary connections.

For more information, see:

User's manual	Manual code (English)
ATEX-certified Safe disconnection function, Ex II (2) GD for ACS880 drives (+Q971) application guide	3AUA0000132231
FPTC-02 ATEX-certified thermistor protection module, Ex II (2) GD (option +L537+Q971) for ACS880 drives user's manual	3AXD50000027782
FPTC-02 ATEX-certified thermistor protection module, instructions for pairing the module with a drive with the ATEX-certified disconnection function (option +Q971)	3AXD50001096700

Implementing the power loss ride-through function

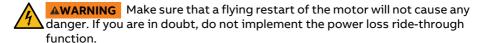
If the incoming supply voltage is cut off, the drive will continue to operate by utilizing the kinetic energy of the rotating motor. The drive will be fully operational as long as the motor rotates and generates energy to the drive.

If you equip the drive with a main contactor or breaker, make sure that it restores the drive input power after a short break. The contactor must either re-connect after the break automatically, or remain closed over the break. Depending on the contactor control circuit design, this can require an additional hold circuit, uninterruptible auxiliary power supply or auxiliary power supply buffering.

Note: If the power loss lasts so long that the drive trips on undervoltage, a fault reset and a fresh start command is required to continue operation.

Implement the power-loss ride-through function as follows:

- 1. Enable the power-loss ride-through function of the drive (parameter 30.31).
- If the installation is equipped with a main contactor, prevent its tripping at the input power break. For example, use a time delay relay (hold) in the contactor control circuit.
- 3. Enable the automatic restart of the motor after a short power supply break:
 - Set the start mode to automatic (parameter 21.01 or 21.19, depending on the motor control mode being used).
 - Define the automatic restart time (parameter 21.18).



Using power factor compensation capacitors with the drive

Power factor compensation is not needed with AC drives. However, if a drive is to be connected in a system with compensation capacitors installed, note the following restrictions.

NOTICE Do not connect power factor compensation capacitors or harmonic filters to the motor cables (between the drive and the motor). They are not designed for use with AC drives and can cause permanent damage to the drive or themselves.

If there are power factor compensation capacitors in parallel with the input of the drive:

- Do not connect a high-power capacitor to the power line while the drive is connected. The connection will cause voltage transients that can trip or cause damage to the drive.
- 2. If capacitor load is increased/decreased step by step when the AC drive is connected to the power line, make sure that the connection steps are low enough not to cause voltage transients that would trip the drive.
- Make sure that the power factor compensation unit is suitable for use in systems with AC drives, ie, harmonic generating loads. In such systems, the compensation unit should typically be equipped with a blocking reactor or harmonic filter.

Controlling a contactor between drive and motor

The control of the output contactor depends on how you use the drive, that is, which motor control mode and which motor stop mode you select.

If you have the DTC motor control mode and the motor ramp stop mode selected, use this operation sequence to open the contactor:

- 1. Give a stop command to the drive.
- 2. Wait until the drive decelerates the motor to zero speed.
- 3. Open the contactor.

If you have the DTC motor control mode and the motor coast stop, or scalar control mode selected, open the contactor as follows:

- Give a stop command to the drive.
- 2. Open the contactor.



AWARNING When the DTC motor control mode is in use, never open the output contactor while the drive controls the motor. The DTC motor control operates extremely fast, much faster than it takes for the contactor to open its contacts. When the contactor starts opening while the drive controls the motor, the DTC control will try to maintain the load current by immediately increasing the drive output voltage to the maximum. This will damage, or even burn, the contactor completely.

Implementing a bypass connection

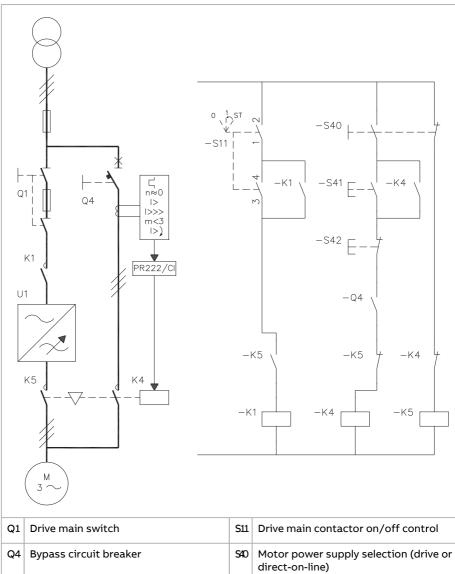
If bypassing is required, employ mechanically or electrically interlocked contactors between the motor and the drive and between the motor and the power line. Make sure with interlocking that the contactors cannot be closed simultaneously. The installation must be clearly marked as defined in IEC/EN 61800-5-1, subclause 6.5.3, for example, "THIS MACHINE STARTS AUTOMATICALLY".



WARNING Never connect the drive output to the electrical power network. The connection may damage the drive.

Example bypass connection

An example bypass connection is shown below.



Q1	Drive main switch	S11	Drive main contactor on/off control
Q4	Bypass circuit breaker	S4 0	Motor power supply selection (drive or direct-on-line)
K1	Drive main contactor	S41	Start when motor is connected direct- on-line
K4	Bypass contactor	S42	Stop when motor is connected direct-on-line

K5 Drive output contactor	-	-
---------------------------	---	---

Switching the motor power supply from drive to direct-on-line

- 1. Stop the drive and the motor with the drive control panel (drive in local control mode) or with the external stop signal (drive in remote control mode).
- 2. Open the main contactor of the drive with S11.
- 3. Switch the motor power supply from the drive to direct-on-line with S40.
- 4. Wait for 10 seconds to allow the motor magnetization to die away.
- 5. Start the motor with S41.

Switching the motor power supply from direct-on-line to drive

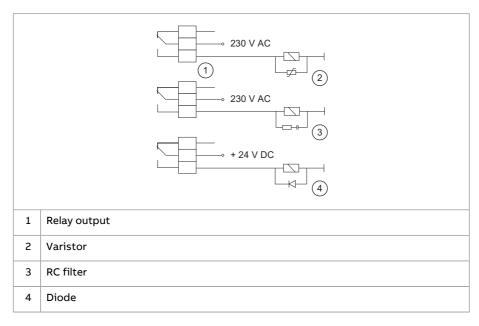
- 1. Stop the motor with S42.
- 2. Switch the motor power supply from direct-on-line to the drive with S40.
- 3. Close the main contactor of the drive with switch S11 (-> turn to position ST for two seconds and leave at position 1).
- 4. Start the drive and the motor with the drive control panel (drive in local control mode) or with the external start signal (drive in remote control mode).

Protecting the contacts of relay outputs

Inductive loads (relays, contactors, motors) cause voltage transients when switched off.

The relay contacts on the drive control unit are protected with varistors (250 V) against overvoltage peaks. In spite of this, it is highly recommended that inductive loads are equipped with noise attenuating circuits (varistors, RC filters [AC] or diodes [DC]) to minimize the EMC emission at switch-off. If not suppressed, the disturbances may connect capacitively or inductively to other conductors in the control cable and form a risk of malfunction in other parts of the system.

Install the protective component as close to the inductive load as possible. Do not install protective components at the relay outputs.



Implementing a motor temperature sensor connection



AWARNING IEC 61800-5-1 requires double or reinforced insulation between the live parts and accessible parts when:

- the accessible parts are not conductive, or
- the accessible parts are conductive, but not connected to the protective earth.

Obey this requirement when you plan the connection of the motor temperature sensor to the drive.

You have these implementation alternatives:

- If there is double or reinforced insulation between the sensor and the live parts
 of the motor: You can connect the sensor directly to the analog/digital input(s)
 of the drive. See the control cable connection instructions. Make sure that the
 voltage is not more than the maximum allowed voltage over the sensor.
- If there is basic insulation between the sensor and the live parts of the motor, or if the insulation type is not known: You can connect the sensor to the drive via an option module. The sensor and the module must form a double or reinforced insulation between the motor live parts and the drive control unit. Refer to Connecting a motor temperature sensor to the drive through an option

- module (page 100). Make sure that the voltage does not exceed the maximum allowed voltage over the sensor.
- 3. If there is basic insulation between the sensor and the live parts of the motor, or if the insulation type is not known: You can connect a sensor to a digital input of the drive via an external relay. The sensor and the relay must form a double or reinforced insulation between the motor's live parts and the digital input of the drive. Make sure that the voltage does not exceed the maximum allowed voltage over the sensor.

■ Connecting a motor temperature sensor to the drive through an option module

This table shows:

- option module types that you can use for the motor temperature sensor connection
- insulation or isolation level that each option module forms between its temperature sensor connector and other connectors
- temperature sensor types that you can connect to each option module
- temperature sensor insulation requirement in order to form, together with the insulation of the option module, a reinforced insulation between the motor live parts and the drive control unit.

Option module			erature type	sensor	Temperature sensor insulation require-
Туре	Insulation/Isolation	PTC	KTY	Pt100, Pt1000	ment
FIO-11	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and other I/O connectors.	х	х	х	Reinforced insulation
FEN-01	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and TTL encoder emulation output.	х	-	-	Reinforced insulation

Option module			erature type	sensor	Temperature sensor insulation requirement
Туре	Insulation/Isolation	PTC	KTY	Pt100, Pt1000	ment
FEN-11	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and TTL encoder emulation output.	x	х	-	Reinforced insulation
FEN-21	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and TTL encoder emulation output.	х	х	-	Reinforced insulation
FEN-31	Galvanic isolation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No isolation between sensor connector and other connectors.	х	х	-	Reinforced insulation
FAIO-01	Basic insulation between sensor connector and drive control unit connector. No insulation between sensor connector and other I/O connectors.	х	х	x	Reinforced or basic insulation. With basic insulation, the other I/O connectors of the option module must be kept disconnected.
FPTC- 01/02 ¹⁾	Reinforced insulation between sensor connector and other connectors (including drive control unit connector).	х	-	-	No special require- ment

 $^{^{1)}}$ Suitable for use in safety functions (SIL2 / PL c classified).

Electrical installation – Global (IEC)

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes how to:

- measure the insulation
- · do the grounding system compatibility check
- · change the EMC filter or ground-to-phase varistor connection
- connect the power and control cables
- install optional modules
- connect a PC.

Necessary tools

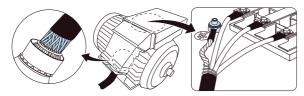
To do the electrical installation, you need these tools:

- wire stripper
- screwdriver set (Torx, Phillips, flat and/or Pozidriv, as necessary)
- · torque wrench.



Grounding the motor cable shield at the motor end

For minimum radio-frequency interference, ground the cable shield 360° at the cable entry of the motor terminal box.



Measuring the insulation

Measuring the insulation resistance of the drive

NOTICE Do not do voltage withstand or insulation resistance tests on the drive. The tests can cause damage to the drive. Every drive is tested for insulation between the main circuit and the chassis at the factory. Also, there are voltage-limiting circuits inside the drive which cut down the testing voltage automatically.

Measuring the insulation resistance of the input power cable

Before you connect the input power cable to the drive, measure its insulation resistance according to local regulations.

Measuring the insulation resistance of the motor and motor cable



AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation, commissioning, or maintenance work.

- Do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Make sure that the motor cable is disconnected from the drive output terminals.
- 3. Measure the insulation resistance between each phase conductor and the protective earth conductor. Use a measuring voltage of 1000 V DC. The insulation resistance of an ABB motor must be more than 100 Mohm (reference value at 25 °C [77 °F]). For the insulation resistance of other motors, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

Note: Moisture inside the motor reduces the insulation resistance. If you think that there is moisture in the motor, dry the motor and do the measurement again.



Grounding system compatibility check

The standard drive can be installed to a symmetrically grounded TN-S system. If you install the drive to another system, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor. Refer to ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English]).



AWARNING Do not install the drive with EMC filter options +E200 or +E202 connected to a system that the filter is not suitable for. This can cause danger, or damage the drive.



AWARNING Do not install the drive with the ground-to-phase varistor connected to a system that the varistor is not suitable for. If you do, the varistor circuit can be damaged.

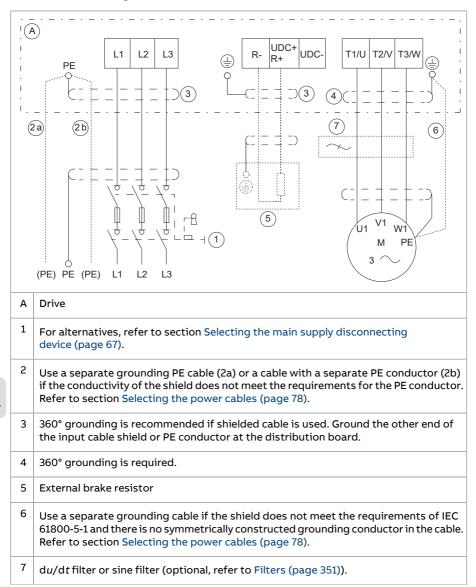
Corner-grounded and midpoint-grounded 525...690 V delta systems

NOTICE Do not install the drive on a 525...690 V corner-grounded or midpoint-grounded delta system. Disconnecting the EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor does not prevent damage to the drive.



Connecting the power cables

Connection diagram



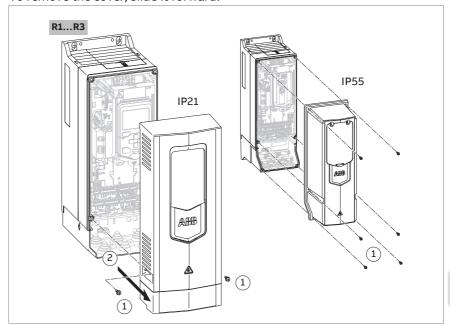


Note: If there is a symmetrically constructed grounding conductor on the motor cable in addition to the conductive shield, connect the grounding conductor to the grounding terminal at the drive and motor ends.

Do not use an asymmetrically constructed motor cable for motors above 30 kW. Connecting its fourth conductor at the motor end increases bearing currents and causes extra wear.

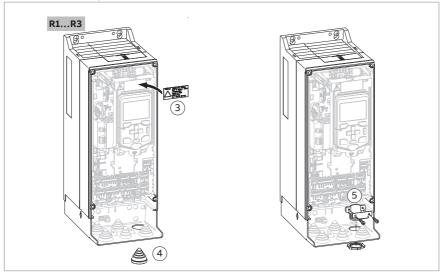
■ Connection procedure for frames R1...R3

- 1. Undo the mounting screws at the sides of the front cover.
- 2. To remove the cover, slide it forward.





- 3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language to the control panel mounting platform.
- 4. Remove the rubber grommets from the entry plate for the cables to be connected.
- 5. <u>IP21 drives:</u> Attach the Romex clamps (included in the delivery in a plastic bag) to the cable entry plate holes.

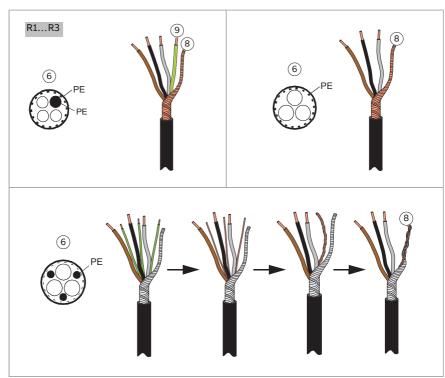




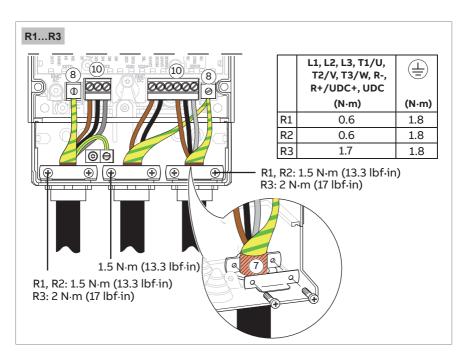
- 6. Prepare the input power and motor cable ends as illustrated in the figure.
 - Note: Bare shield will be grounded 360°.
- 7. <u>IP21 drives:</u> Ground the shields 360° in the Romex clamps by tightening the connector onto the stripped part of the cable. <u>IP55 drives:</u> Tighten the clamps onto the stripped part of the cables. Be careful of the sharp edges.

NOTICE Do not use the 360° grounding clamp for cable strain relief and do not tighten it more than the specified torque. A tightening torque that is too high can cause damage to the cable insulation.

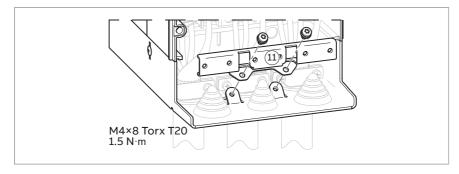
- 8. Connect the twisted shields of the power cables to the grounding terminals.
- Connect the additional PE conductor (if used) of the input cable to the grounding terminal.
- 10. Connect the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals and the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals. Connect the brake resistor conductors (if used) to the R+ and R-terminals. Tighten the screws to the torque given in the figure below.







11. Install the control cable grounding shelf in the cable entry box.

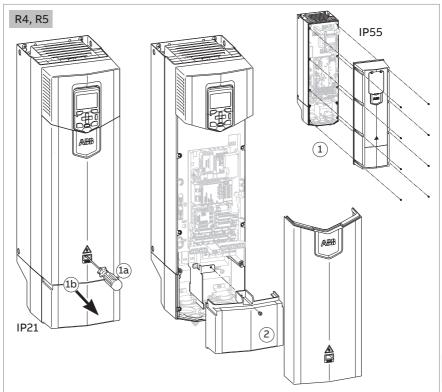


12. Attach the cables outside the drive mechanically.



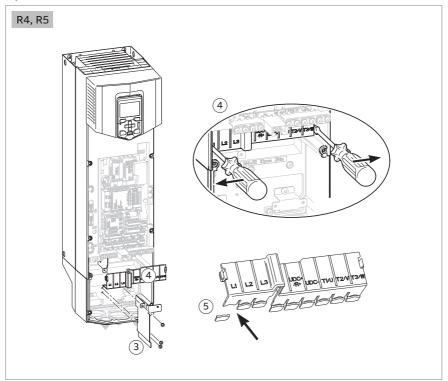
Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5

- 1. Remove the front cover. <u>IP21 drives:</u> Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and lift the cover from the bottom outwards (b).
- 2. For IP21 drives: To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screw.



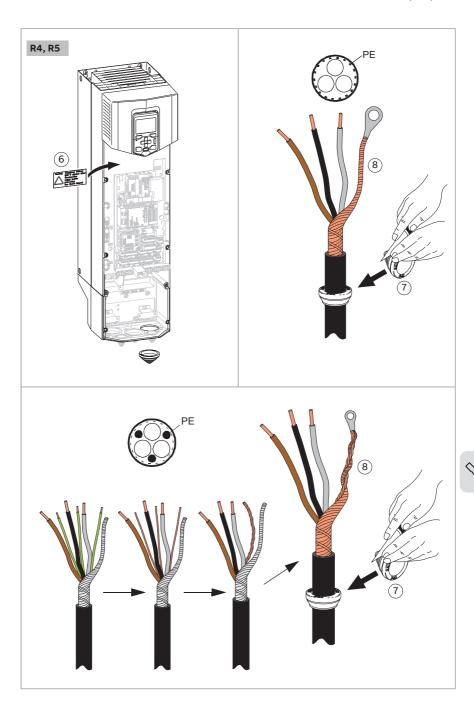


- 3. <u>For frame R4:</u> For easier installation, remove the EMC shroud that separates the input and output cabling.
- 4. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips and lift the shroud up from the sides with a screwdriver.
- 5. Open holes into the shroud for the cables.





- 6. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit top.
- 7. Cut holes into the rubber grommets. Slide the grommets onto the cables. Slide the cables through the holes of the bottom plate and attach the grommets to the holes.
- 8. Prepare the ends of the input power and motor cables as illustrated in the figure. Bare shield will be grounded 360° under the grounding clamp.



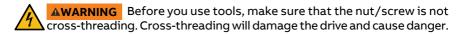
9. Ground the cable shields 360° under the grounding clamps. Be careful of the sharp edges.

NOTICE Do not use the 360° grounding clamp for cable strain relief and do not tighten it more than the specified torque. A tightening torque that is too high can cause damage to the cable insulation.

- 10. Connect the twisted cable shields to the grounding terminals.
- 11. Connect the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals and the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals. Tighten the screws to the torque given in the figure below.

Note: For cable lug installation (frame R5): Detach the connector and install a cable lug to the terminal post as follows:

- Remove the combi screw that attaches the connector to its terminal post and pull the connector off.
- Attach the cable lug to the conductor.
- Put the cable lug onto the terminal post. Start the nut, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.



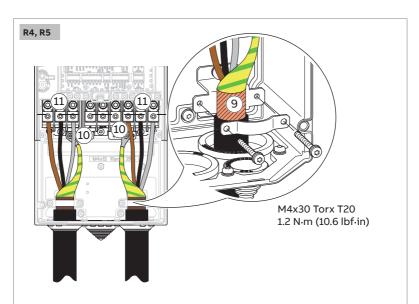
- Undo the nut that attaches the connector to its terminal post and pull the connector off.
- · Attach the cable lug to the conductor.
- Put the cable lug onto the terminal post. Start the nut, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.



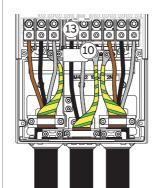
AWARNING Before you use tools, make sure that the nut/screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.

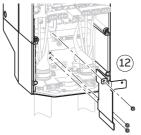
- Tighten the nut to a torque of 5 N·m.
- 12. Install the EMC shroud separating the input and output cabling if not installed yet.
- 13. <u>Drives with option +D150:</u> Slide the brake resistor cable through the brake resistor and control cable clamp assembly. Connect the conductors to the R+ and R- terminals and tighten to the torque given in the figure.
- 14. Install the shroud on the power terminals.
- 15. Attach the cables outside the unit mechanically. Install the rubber grommets to the unused entry plate holes.

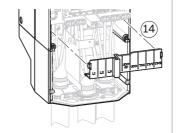




	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W (N·m)	R-, R+/UDC+, UDC- (N·m)	(N·m)
R4	3.3	3.3	2.9
R5	15	15	2.9









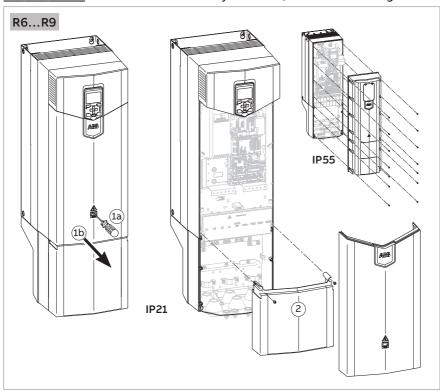
Connection procedure for frames R6...R9

For option +H358 (frames R6...R9), refer to ACS880-01, ACS580-01, ACH580-01, ACQ580-01 UK gland plate (+H358) installation guide (3AXD50000034735 [English]).

For detaching connectors, installing the cable to connector and attaching the connector again, refer to section Detaching connectors (frames R8 and R9) (page 122).

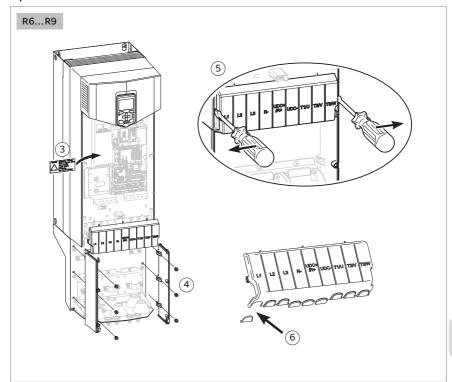
For cable lug installation, refer to section Cable lug installation (frames R6...R9) (page 123).

- 1. Remove the front cover: <u>For IP21 drives:</u> Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and pull the cover by the bottom outwards (b).
- 2. For IP21 drives: To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screws.



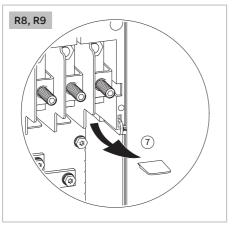


- 3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit.
- 4. To remove the side plates of the cable entry box, undo the mounting screws.
- 5. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips on the sides with a screwdriver and lift.
- 6. Open holes into the shroud for the cables.

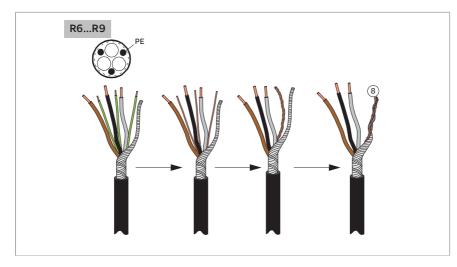




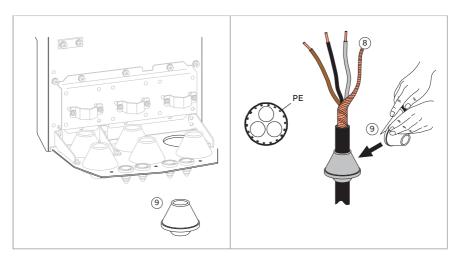
7. <u>If you install parallel cables (frames R8 and R9):</u> Open holes into the shroud on the power cable terminal for the cables.



- 8. Prepare the ends of the input power and motor cables as illustrated in the figure. The bare shield will be grounded 360° under the clamp.
- 9. Cut holes into the rubber grommets. Slide the grommets onto the cables. Slide the cables through the holes of the bottom plate and attach the grommets to the holes.







10. Tighten the clamp onto the stripped part of the cable. Be careful of the sharp edges.

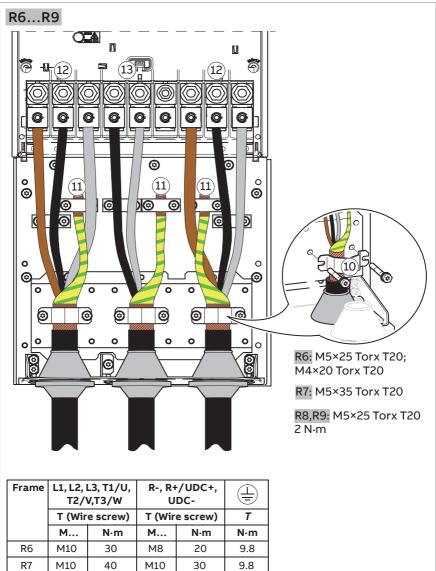
NOTICE Do not use the 360° grounding clamp for cable strain relief and do not tighten it more than the specified torque. A tightening torque that is too high can cause damage to the cable insulation.

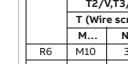
- 11. Attach the twisted shields of the cables under the grounding clamps.
- 12. Connect the phase conductors of the input cable to the L1, L2 and L3 terminals and the phase conductors of the motor cable to the T1/U, T2/V and T3/W terminals. Tighten the screws to the torque given in the figure.

Note: Frames R8 and R9: If you put only one conductor to the connector, ABB recommends that you put it under the upper pressure plate.

13. <u>Drives with option +D150</u>: Connect the brake resistor cable conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.



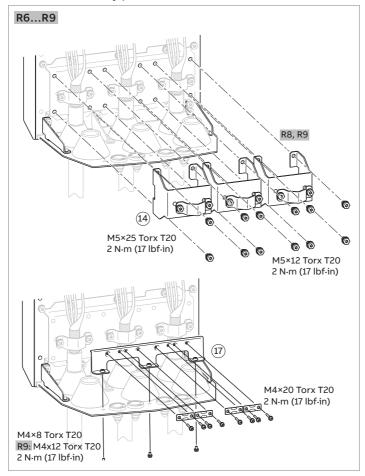




	T2/V,T3/W T (Wire screw)		UDC- T (Wire screw)		
					T
	М	N∙m	М	N⋅m	N⋅m
R6	M10	30	M8	20	9.8
R7	M10	40	M10	30	9.8
R8	M10	40	M10	40	9.8
R9	M12	70	M12	70	9.8



- 14. <u>If you install parallel cables (frames R8 and R9)</u>, install the grounding shelves for them. Repeat steps 9 to 13.
- 15. Install the shroud on the power terminals.
- 16. Install the side plates of the cable entry box.
- 17. Install the control cable grounding shelf in the cable entry box.
- 18. Attach the cables outside the drive mechanically. Install the rubber grommets to the unused entry plate holes.



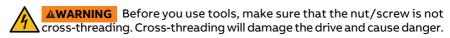


Detaching connectors (frames R8 and R9)

ABB does not recommend that you detach the connectors. If you do, detach and install the connector as follows:

L1, L2 and L3 connectors

- 1. R8: Loosen the nut that attaches the connector to its terminal post.
 R9: Loosen the combi screw (R9) that attaches the connector to the busbar.
- 2. Pull the connector off.
- 3. Put the conductor under the connector pressure plate and pre-tighten the conductor.
- 4. Put the connector back. Start the nut or combi screw, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.



- 5. Tighten the nut or combi screw to a torque of 30 N·m.
- Tighten the conductor(s) to 40 N⋅m for frame R8 or to 70 N⋅m for frame R9.

T1/U, T2/V and T3/W connectors

- 1. Loosen the nut that attaches the connector to its its terminal post.
- 2. Put the conductor under the connector pressure plate and pre-tighten the conductor.
- 3. Put the connector back onto its terminal post. Start the nut, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.



- **AWARNING** Before you use tools, make sure that the nut/screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.
- Tighten the nut to a torque of 30 N·m.
- 6. Tighten the conductor(s) to 40 N·m for frame R8 or to 70 N·m for frame R9.

Cable lug installation (frames R6...R9)

The power cable connectors are connected to the drive with a nut to its terminal post or with a combi screw to busbar as follows:

Terminal	Nut / Screw size				
	R6	R7	R8	R9	
L1, L2, L3	M8×25 combi screw	M8 nut	M10 nut	M10×30 combi screw	
R-	M8 nut	M8 nut	M10 nut	M10 nut	
R+, UDC+	M8 nut	M8 nut	M10×30 combi screw	M10×30 combi screw	
UDC-	M8 nut	M8 nut	M8×30 combi screw	M8×30 combi screw	
U/T1, V/T2, W/T3	M8 nut	M8 nut	M10 nut	M10 nut	
Tightening torques M8: 16 N·m. M10: 30 N·m					

- Loosen the nut or combi screw. Pull the connector off.
- 2. Attach the cable lug to the conductor.
- Depending on the terminal and frame size, put the cable lug onto the terminal post and tighten the nut, or connect the cable lug with the combi screw. Start the nut or combi screw, and turn it at least two rotations by hand.



AWARNING Before you use tools, make sure that the nut or screw is not cross-threading. Cross-threading will damage the drive and cause danger.





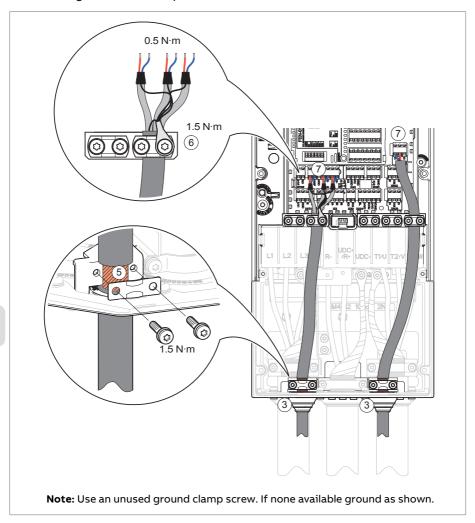
AWARNING Use a suitable cable lug. With a thin cable lug (thinner than the original connector) and the original combi screw, the connection is loose and can cause sparkling and fire hazard.

Connecting the control cables

Refer to section Control unit (page 159) for the default I/O connections of the Factory macro of ACS880 primary control program. For other macros and control programs, refer to the firmware manual.

Connection process

This drawing shows an example connection of control cables.







▲ WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

- Repeat the steps described in Electrical safety precautions (page 18).
- Remove the front cover(s). Refer to section Connecting the power cables (page 106).
- 3. Cut adequate holes into the rubber grommets and slide the grommets onto the cables. Slide the cables through the holes of the bottom plate and attach the grommets to the holes.
- 4. Route the cables as shown below.
- 5. Ground the outer shields of all control cables 360 degrees at a grounding clamp in the cable entry box. Tighten the clamp to 1.5 N·m (13 lbf·in). Keep the shields continuous as close to the terminals of the control unit as possible. Secure the cables mechanically at the clamps below the control unit. Frames R1 to R3: Ground also the pair-cable shields and grounding wires at the cable entry box grounding clamp.
- 6. <u>Frames R4 to R9:</u> Ground the pair-cable shields and all grounding wires to the clamp below the control unit.
- 7. Connect the conductors to the appropriate terminals of the control unit and tighten to 0.5 N·m (5 lbf·in).
- 8. Install the front cover.

Note:

- Leave the other ends of the control cable shields unconnected or ground them indirectly via a high-frequency capacitor with a few nanofarads, eg, 3.3 nF / 630 V. The shield can also be grounded directly at both ends if they are in the same ground line with no significant voltage drop between the end points.
- Keep any signal wire pairs twisted as close to the terminals as possible.
 Twisting the wire with its return wire reduces disturbances caused by inductive coupling.

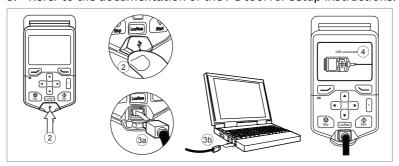


Connecting a PC

NOTICE Do not connect a PC directly to the control panel connector of the control unit. It can cause damage.

To connect a control panel to a PC (with, for example, Drive Composer PC tool):

- 1. Put the control panel into the panel holder or platform.
- 2. Remove the USB connector cover on the front of the control panel.
- 3. Connect an USB cable (Type A to Type Mini-B) between the USB connector on the control panel (3a) and a free USB port on the PC (3b).
- 4. The panel will display an indication whenever the connection is active.
- 5. Refer to the documentation of the PC tool for setup instructions.



Alternatively, you can connect an Ethernet networking cable (eg. Cat 5e) to the Ethernet port behind the control panel. Make sure that the control panel is placed on a platform or a DIN rail.



Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel)

One control panel (or PC) can be used to control several drives (or inverter units, supply units etc.) by constructing a panel bus. This is done by daisy-chaining the panel connections of the drives. Some drives have the necessary (twin) panel connectors in the control panel holder; those that do not require the installation of an FDPI-02 module (available separately). For further information, see the hardware description and FDPI-02 diagnostics and panel interface user's manual (3AUA0000113618 [English]).

The maximum allowed length of the cable chain is 100 m (328 ft).

Do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work

- 1. Connect the panel to one drive using an Ethernet (for example Cat 5e) cable.
 - Use Menu Settings Edit texts Drive to give a descriptive name to the drive

- Use parameter 49.01* to assign the drive with a unique node ID number
- Set other parameters in group 49* if necessary
- Use parameter 49.06* to validate any changes.
- *The parameter group is 149 with supply (line-side), brake or DC/DC converter units.

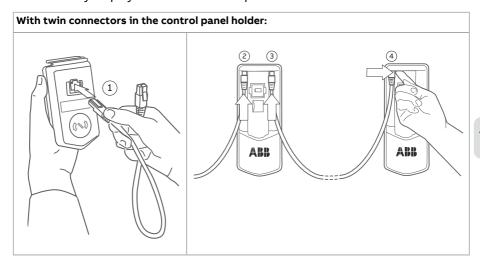
Repeat the above for each drive.

- 2. With the panel connected to one unit, link the units using Ethernet cables.
- 3. Switch on the bus termination on the drive that is farthest from the control panel in the chain.
 - With drives that have the panel mounted on the front cover, move the terminating switch into the outer position.
 - With the FDPI-02 module: move termination switch S1 on the FDPI-02 module into the TERMINATED position.

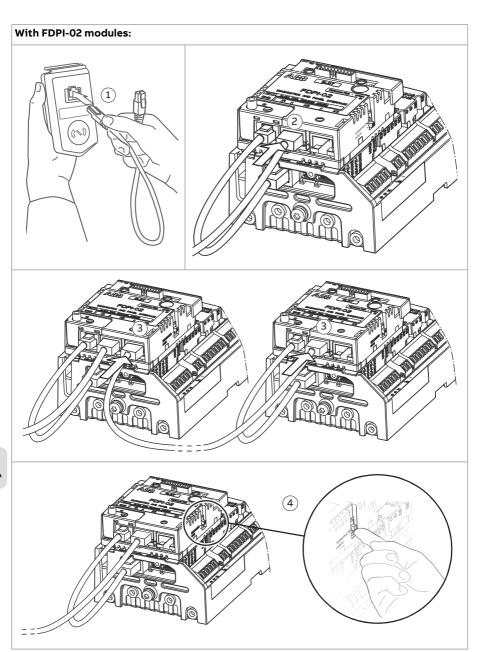
Make sure that bus termination is off on all other drives.

4. On the control panel, switch on the panel bus functionality (Options - Select drive - Panel bus). The drive to be controlled can now be selected from the list under Options - Select drive.

If a PC is connected to the control panel, the drives on the panel bus are automatically displayed in the Drive Composer PC tool.

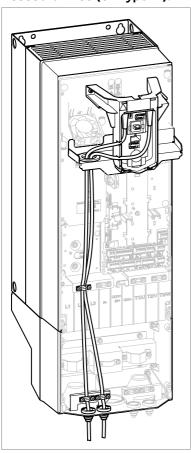








ACS880-01 IP55 (UL Type 12):



Installing option modules

Note: The instructions in this section are applicable to drives with ZCU control unit. For UCU-20 control unit related instructions, refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

In frames R1 and R2, 90° connector cannot be used in Slot 1. In other frames, there is 50...55 mm free space for the connector and its cable available on Slots 1, 2 and 3.

<u>For frames R1...R3</u>: Pull the control panel mounting platform upwards to gain access to the optional module slots.





AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

NOTICE Use an antistatic wrist strap when you handle printed circuit boards. Do not touch the boards unnecessarily. The boards are sensitive to electrostatic discharge.

Pay attention to the free space required by the cabling or terminals coming to the option modules.

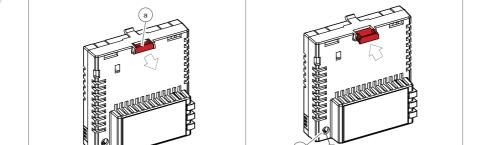
- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Pull out the lock (a) with a screwdriver.

Note: The location of the lock depends on the module type.

- 3. Install the module to a free option module slot on the control unit.
- 4. Push in the lock (a).
- 5. Tighten the grounding screw (b) to a torque of 0.8 N·m (7 lbf·in).

Note: The screw tightens the connections and grounds the module. It is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.

NOTICE Do not tighten the screw too much or too little. If you tighten the screw too much, damage to the threads or to the module can occur. A loose screw can cause a malfunction.





6. Connect the wiring to the module. Obey the instructions given in the documentation of the module.

If you must remove the option module after it is installed into the drive, use a suitable tool (for example, small pliers) to carefully pull out the lock.

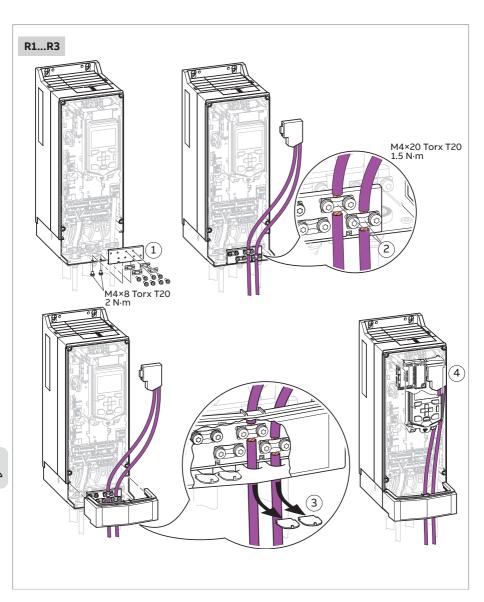
Fieldbus cabling



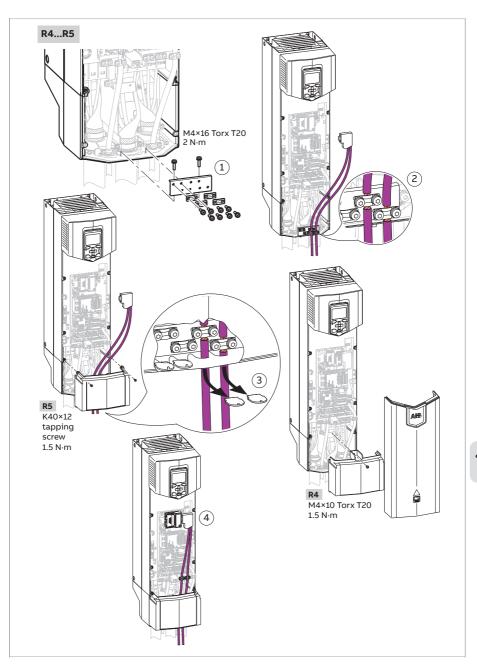
▲ WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, Injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

- 1. Install the additional grounding shelf.
- 2. Ground the outer shields of the cables 360° at a grounding clamp.
- 3. Open holes into the cable entry box cover for the cables. Install the cable entry box cover.
- 4. Plug the connector to the fieldbus module.

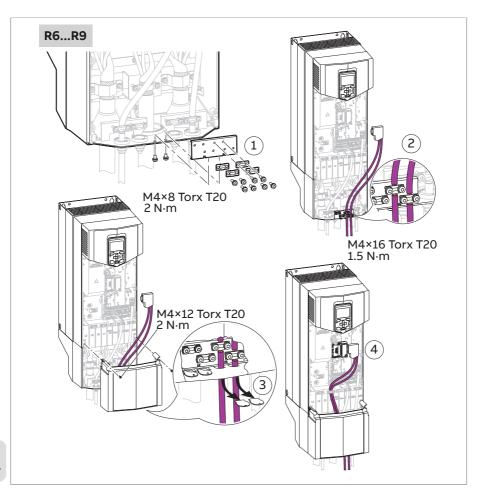












Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit

You can install the FSO safety functions module onto Slot 2 on the control unit or, in frames R6...R9, also next to the control unit.

Installation procedure

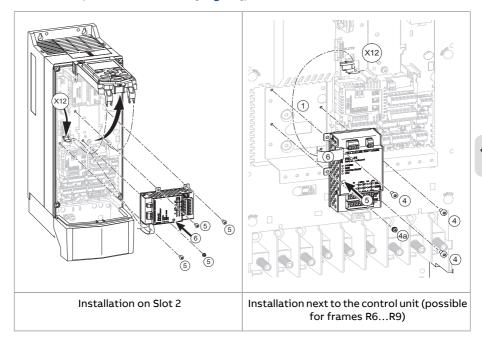


AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

1. Do the steps described in Electrical safety precautions (page 18).



- 2. Remove the front cover. See section Connecting the power cables (page 106).
- 3. <u>For frames R1...R3:</u> Pull the control panel mounting platform upwards to gain access to the optional module slots.
- 4. Insert the module carefully into its position on the control unit or on its place next to the control unit.
- 5. Attach the module with four screws. Note: The grounding screw (a) is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.
- 6. Tighten the grounding screw of the electronics to 0.8 N·m.
- 7. Connect the data communication cable to slot X110 on the module and to connector X12 on the drive control unit.
- 8. Connect the Safe torque off wires to connector X111 on the module and to connector XSTO on the drive module control unit.
- 9. Connect the external +24 V power supply cable to connector X112.
- 10. Connect the other wires as shown in FSO-12 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015612 [English]) or FSO-21 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015614 [English]).



■ Installing the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module

To install the FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module onto the drive control unit, refer to FSPS-21 PROFIsafe safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000158638 [English]).

■ Installing the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module

To install the FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module onto the drive control unit, refer to FSCS-21 CIP Safety™ functions module user's manual (3AXD50001065478 [English]).





Electrical installation – North America (NEC)

Contents of this chapter

This chapter gives instructions on wiring the drive.

Safety



AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do installation, commissioning, or maintenance work.

Necessary tools

To do the electrical installation, you need these tools:

- · wire stripper
- screwdriver set (Torx, Phillips, flat and/or Pozidriv, as necessary)
- torque wrench.

Measuring the insulation

Refer to section Measuring the insulation (page 104).



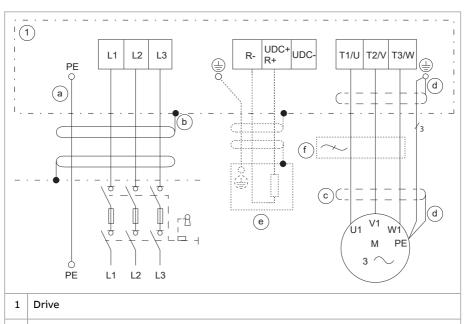
Grounding system compatibility check

Refer to section Grounding system compatibility check (page 105).

Connecting the power cables

Connection diagram

Note: NEC installation can include separate insulated conductors inside a conduit, shielded VFD cable in conduit, or shielded VFD cable without conduit. The normal dashed symbol (c) in this diagram represents the shield of shielded VFD cable. The same solid symbol (b) represents conduit.



- a Insulated ground conductor in a conduit. Ground to drive's PE terminal and to the distribution panel ground bus. For a VFD cable installation, refer to (d).
- b Conduit ground. Bond the conduit to the drive's conduit box and to the distribution panel enclosure. For a VFD cable installation, refer to (c).
- c Shield of a VFD shielded cable. Ground the shield 360° under drive's grounding clamp then twist and connect under the drive's ground terminal. Ground also the shield 360° at the motor end then twist and connect under the motor's ground terminal. For a conduit installation, refer to (b).



- d Symmetrically constructed grounding conductors inside a VFD shielded cable. Twist together and ground under drive's ground terminal and under the motor's ground terminal. For a conduit installation, refer to (a).
- External brake resistor connection (if used). For a conduit installation: Refer to a and b. For a VFD cable installation: Refer to c and d. In addition, cut the third phase conductor which is not needed for the brake resistor connection. Refer to chapter Resistor braking (page 311).
- f If necessary, install an external filter (du/dt, common mode, or sine filter). Filters are available from ABB.

Note: Do not use an asymmetrically constructed motor cable for motors above 30 kW. Connecting its fourth conductor at the motor end increases bearing currents and causes extra wear.

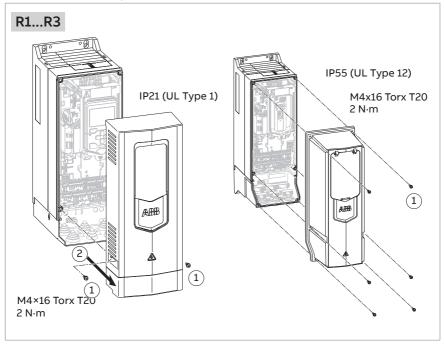
All openings in the drive enclosure must be closed with UL listed devices having the same Type rating as the drive Type.



Connection procedure for frames R1 to R3

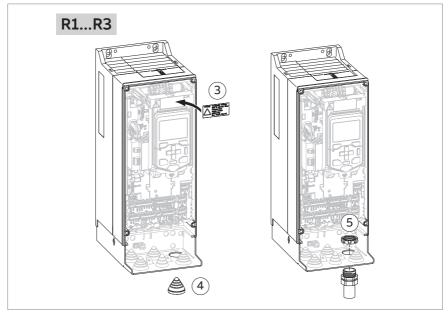
Use symmetrical shielded VFD cable for the motor cabling.

- 1. Undo the mounting screws at the sides of the front cover.
- 2. To remove the cover, slide it forward.



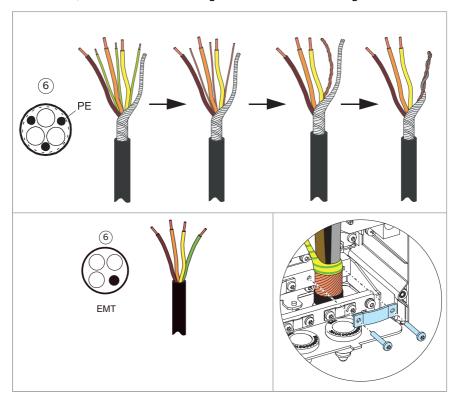


- 3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language to the control panel mounting platform.
- 4. Remove the rubber grommets from the entry plate for the cables.
- 5. Attach the cable conduit to the drive conduit plate, and to the motor or source of power distribution. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the VFD shielded cable or discrete conductors through the conduit and strip the cable ends.



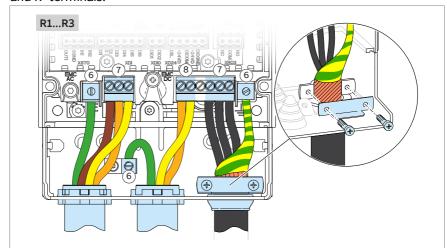


6. Cut the cables to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors). If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° at the grounding clamp. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the ground terminal.



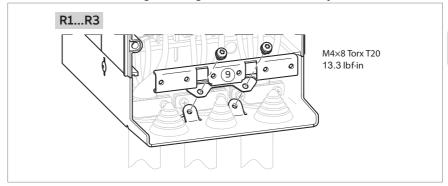


- 7. Connect the phase conductors of the input and motor cables. Tighten the screws.
- 8. <u>If brake chopper is in use:</u> Connect the brake resistor conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.



	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3W, r-, R+/UDC+, UDC-	Ground	Clamp
	lbf-ft	lbf-ft	lbf-in
R1	0.4	1.3	13.3
R2	0.4	1.3	13.3
R3	1.3	1.3	17

9. Install the control cable grounding shelf in the cable entry box.



10. Connect the motor cable at the motor end.

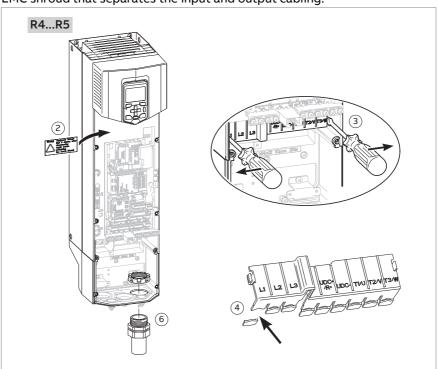


Connection procedure for frames R4 and R5

In this connection procedure, the cables are connected to the power cable connectors.

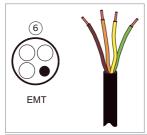
Use symmetrical shielded VFD cable for the motor cabling.

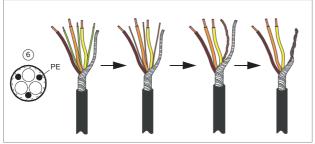
- 1. Remove the front cover. <u>UL Type 1 units:</u> Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and lift the cover from the bottom outwards (b). To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screw.
- 2. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit top.
- 3. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips and lift the shroud up from the sides with a screwdriver.
- 4. Open holes into the shroud for the cables. For easier installation, remove the EMC shroud that separates the input and output cabling.





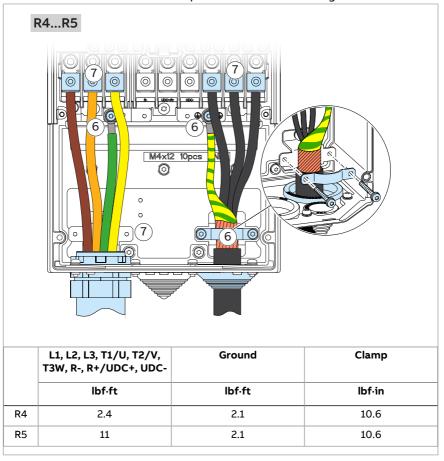
- 5. Attach the cable conduit to the drive conduit plate, and to the motor or source of power distribution. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the VFD shielded cable or discrete conductors through the conduit and strip the cable ends.
- 6. Cut the cables to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors). If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° at the clamp. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the grounding terminal.





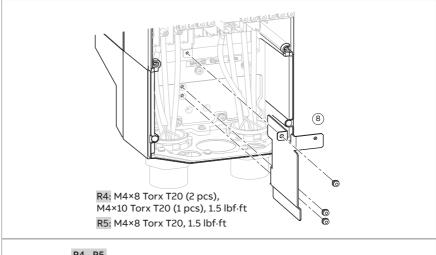


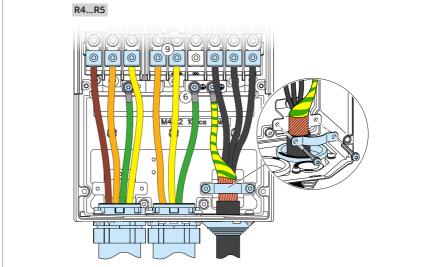
7. Connect the conductors of the input and motor cables. Tighten the screws.





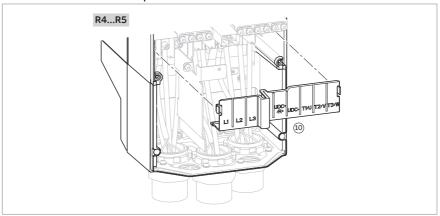
- 8. Install the EMC shroud separating the input and output cabling if not installed yet.
- 9. <u>Drives with option +D150:</u> Connect the conductors of the brake resistor conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.







10. Install the shroud on the power cable terminals.



11. Connect the motor cable at the motor end.

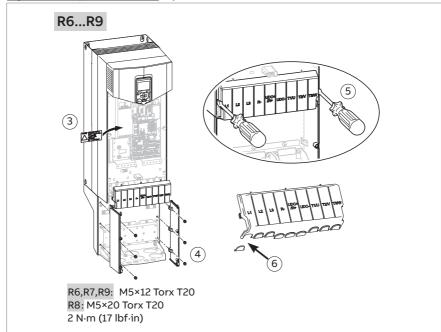


Connection procedure for frames R6 to R9

In this connection procedure, the cables are connected to the power cable connectors.

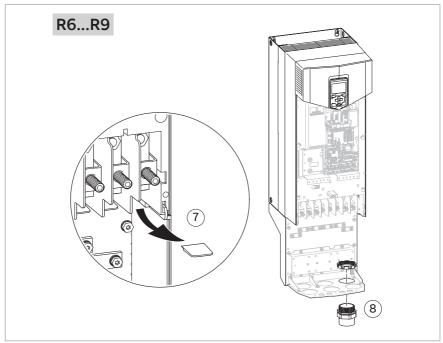
Use symmetrical shielded VFD cable for the motor cabling.

- Remove the front cover: <u>UL Type 1 drives</u>: Release the retaining clip with a screwdriver (a) and pull the cover by the bottom outwards (b).
- 2. <u>UL Type 1 drives:</u> To remove the cable entry box cover, undo the mounting screws.
- 3. Attach the residual voltage warning sticker in the local language next to the control unit top.
- 4. Remove the side plates of the cable entry box.
- 5. To remove the shroud on the power cable terminals, release the clips on the sides with a screwdriver and lift.
- 6. If you install parallel cables, open holes into the shroud for the cables.



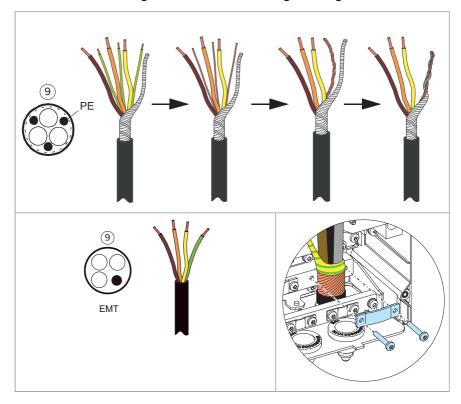


- 7. Open holes into the shroud on the power cable terminals for the cables.
- 8. Attach the cable conduit to the drive conduit plate, and to the motor or source of power distribution. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the VFD shielded cable or discrete conductors through the conduit and strip the cable ends.



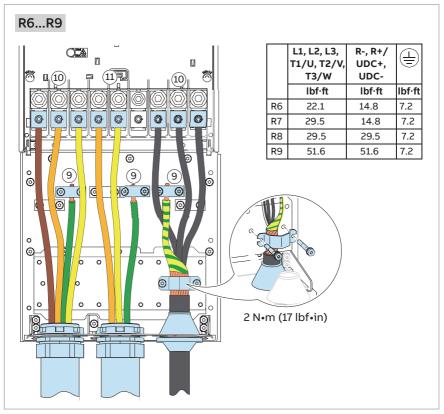


9. Cut the cables to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors). If you use symmetrical shielded VFD cable, twist the grounding wires together with the cable shield and connect them to the grounding terminals. Ground the shield 360° at the clamp. If you use discrete conductors, connect the insulated ground conductor to the grounding terminal.





- 10. Connect the conductors of the input and motor cables. Tighten the screws.
- 11. <u>Drives with option +D150:</u> Connect the conductors of the brake resistor conductors to the R+ and R- terminals.



- 12. Install the shroud on the power terminals.
- 13. Install the side plates of the cable entry box.



Connecting the control cables

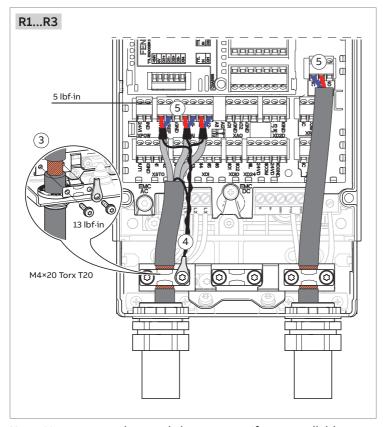
Refer to section Control unit (page 159) for the default I/O connections of the Factory macro of ACS880 primary control program. For other macros and control programs, refer to the firmware manual.

Connection procedure

- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- Attach the cable conduits to the drive conduit plate. Make sure the conduit is correctly bonded at both ends and that conductivity is consistent throughout the conduit. Slide the control cables through the conduit. Cut to suitable length (note the extra length of the grounding conductors) and strip the conductors.
- 3. Ground the outer shields of all control cables 360° at a grounding clamp.
- Ground the pair-cable shields to the grounding clamp (in frames R4 and R5 below the control unit). Leave the other end of the shields unconnected or ground them indirectly via a high-frequency capacitor with a few nanofarads, eq, 3.3 nF / 630 V.
- 5. Connect the conductors to the appropriate terminals of the control unit.
- 6. Wire the optional modules if included in the delivery.
- 7. Install the front cover. Refer to Connecting the power cables (page 138)

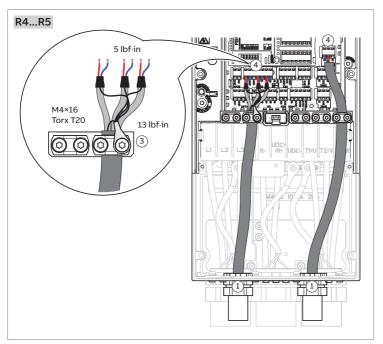


154 Electrical installation – North America (NEC)



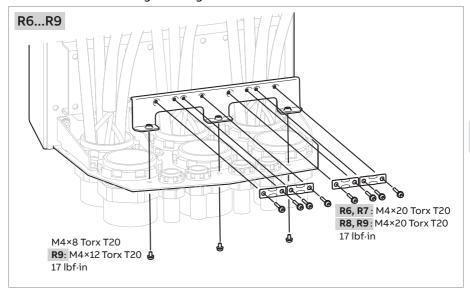
Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.



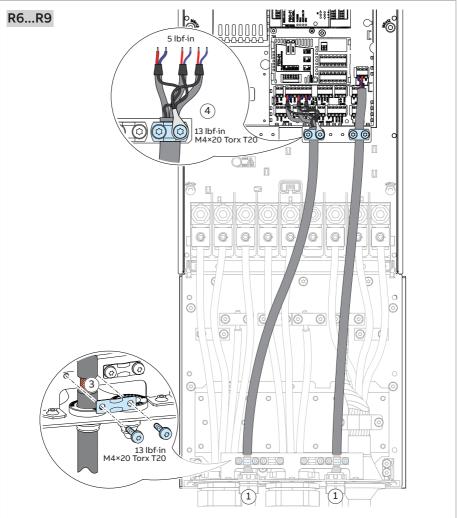


Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.

Install the control cable grounding shelf.







Note: Use an unused ground clamp screw. If none available ground as shown.

Connecting a PC

Refer to section Connecting a PC (page 126).

Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel)

Refer to section Panel bus (control of several units from one control panel) (page 126).



Installing option modules

Refer to section Installing option modules (page 129).





Control unit

Contents of this chapter

This chapter

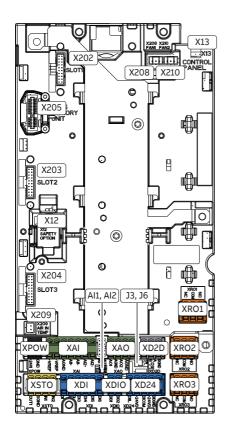
- · gives information on the connections of the control unit, and
- · has the specifications of the inputs and outputs of the control unit.

General

The drive uses ZCU-12 control unit. UCU-20 control unit is available with plus code +V998. For more information on the UCU-20 control unit, refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

ZCU-12 layout

This figure shows the layout of the ZCU-12 control unit.



	Description
XAI	Analog inputs
XAO	Analog outputs
XDI	Digital inputs
XDIO	Digital input/outputs
XD24	Digital input interlock (DIIL) and +24 V output
XD2D	Drive-to-drive link or Modbus/RTU
XPOW	External power input
XRO1	Relay output RO1
XRO2	Relay output RO2
XRO3	Relay output RO3
XSTO	Safe torque off connection
X12	Connection for FSO safety functions module
X13	Control panel connection
X202	Option slot 1
X203	Option slot 2
X204	Option slot 3
X205	Memory unit connection
X208	Cooling fan 1 connection
X209	Connection for ambient temperature sensor (at air inlet). Connected at the factory.
X210	Cooling fan 2 connection
AI1, AI2	Current/Voltage selection jumpers (J1, J2) for analog inputs
J 3	Drive-to-drive link termination switch (J3)
J6	Common digital input ground se- lection switch (J6)

Default control connection diagram of the drive control unit (ZCU)

Connection	Term	Term Description	
XPOW External power input			
	+24VI	24 V DC, 2 A min. (without optional modules)	
1 +24VI 2 GND	GND		
XAI Reference voltage and analog in	nputs		
1 +VREF	+VREF	10 V DC, R _L 110 kohm	
2 -VREF	-VREF	-10 V DC, R _L 110 kohm	
3 AGND 4 Al1+	AGND	Ground	
5 Al1- = 6 Al2+	Al1+	Speed reference	
7 AI2-	Al1-	0(2)10 V, R _{in} > 200 kohm ¹⁾	
AI2:I AI1:I AI2:U AI1:U	Al2+	By default not in use.	
	AI2-	0(4)20 mA, R _{in} = 100 ohm ¹⁾	
	Al1	Current (I) / voltage (U) selection jumper for Al1	
	AI2	Al2 Current (I) / voltage (U) selection jumper for Al2	
XAO Analog outputs	'		
1 A01	AO1	Motor speed rpm	
2 AGND	() / ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! !		
3 AO2 4 AGND	AO2	Motor current	
= = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =	AGND	020 mA, R _L < 500 ohm	
XD2D Drive-to-drive link			
1 B	В	Master/follower, drive-to-drive or embed-	
2 A	Α	ded fieldbus connection	
3 BGND	BGND		
	J3	Drive-to-drive link termination	

Connection		Term	Description
XRO1, XRO2, XRO3 Relay outp	outs		
11 12 13 21	NC COM NO	NC COM NO	Ready run 250 V AC / 30 V DC 2 A
Fault 222 23 31 32 33 2 33 2 +24V	NO NC COM NO	NC COM NO NC	Running 250 V AC / 30 V DC 2 A Fault (-1)
5 DIOG	ND Z	COM NO	250 V AC / 30 V DC 2 A
XD24 Auxiliary voltage outpu	t, digit	al interlock	· ·
	DIIL	DIIL	Run enable
2 +	-24VD DICOM	+24VD	+24 V DC 200 mA ²⁾
	-24VD	DICOM	Digital input ground
5 D	IOGND	+24VD	+24 V DC 200 mA ²⁾
		DIOGND	Digital input/output ground
XDIO Digital input/outputs			
1	DIO1	DIO1	Output: Ready run
2	DIO2	DIO2	Output: Running
		J 6	Ground selection ³⁾
XDI Digital inputs			
0.00		DI1	Stop (0) / Start (1)
2 +24VI 5 DIOGN		DI2	Forward (0) / Reverse (1)
	DI1	DI3	Reset
2	DI2	DI4	Acc/Dec time select ⁴⁾
	DI3 DI4	DI5	Constant speed 1 (1 = On) ⁵⁾
5	DI5 DI6	DI6	By default, not in use.
XSTO Safe torque off connec	tion		
4.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2.2			

Connection	Term	Description
1 OUT1 2 SGND 3 IN1 4 IN2	OUT1 SGND IN1 IN2	IN1 and IN2 are connected to OUT1 at the factory. To enable start and operation, IN1 and IN2 must be connected to OUT1. Refer to chapter The Safe torque off function (page 327).
X12	Safety op	tions connection
X13	Control panel connection	
X205	Memory u	nit connection

¹⁾ Current [0(4)...20 mA, $R_{\rm in}$ = 100 ohm] or voltage [0(2)...10 V, $R_{\rm in}$ > 200 kohm] input selected by jumper. Change of setting requires reboot of control unit.

²⁾ Total load capacity of these outputs is 4.8 W (200 mA at 24 V) minus the power taken by DIO1 and DIO2.

³⁾ Determines whether DICOM is separated from DIOGND (ie. common reference for digital inputs floats; in practice, selects whether the digital inputs are used in current sinking or sourcing mode). See also ZCU ground isolation diagram (page 169). DICOM=DIOGND ON: DICOM connected to DIOGND. OFF: DICOM and DIOGND separate.

^{4) 0 =} Acceleration/deceleration ramps defined by parameters 23.12/23.13 in use. 1 = Acceleration/deceleration ramps defined by parameters 23.14/23.15 in use.

⁵⁾ Constant speed 1 is defined by parameter 22.26.

Additional information on the connections

Connecting motor temperature sensors to the drive

Refer to the electrical planning instructions.

Power supply for the control unit (XPOW)

Refer to the control unit connector data for the current and voltage ratings of the power supply.

Connect an additional external power supply to the free +24 V and GND terminals of the XPOW terminal block if:

- the control unit must be kept operational during input power breaks, for example, because of continuous fieldbus communication
- immediate restart is necessary after a power break (that is, no control unit power-up delay is permitted).

Digital interlock (DIIL)

Digital interlock input (DIIL) terminal is originally intended for interlock signals that stop the drive/unit when necessary. In the ACS880 primary control program, DIIL terminal is the source for the run enable signal by default. The inverter unit or drive cannot start, or it stops when there is no DIIL signal. In other control programs (and units), the default use of the DIIL terminal varies. Refer to the firmware manual for more information.

Note: This input is not SIL or PL classified.

The XD2D connector

The XD2D connector provides an RS-485 connection that can be used for

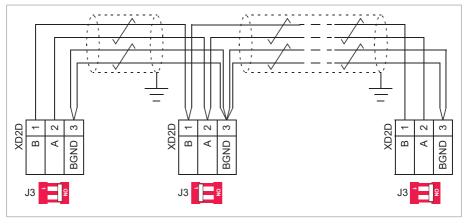
- basic master/follower communication with one master drive and multiple followers,
- fieldbus control through the embedded fieldbus interface (EFB), or
- drive-to-drive (D2D) communication implemented by application programming.

See the firmware manual for the related parameter settings.

Terminate the bus on the units at the ends of the drive-to-drive link. Disable bus termination on the intermediate units.

Use a shielded twisted-pair cable for data, and another pair or a wire for signal ground (nominal impedance 100...165 ohm, for example Belden 9842). For the best immunity, ABB recommends high quality cable. Keep the cable as short as possible. Avoid unnecessary loops and parallel runs near power cables such as motor cables.

The diagram that follows shows the wiring of the drive-to-drive link. The diagram is applicable to ZCU-12 control units.



Safe torque off (XSTO)

The XSTO input only acts as a true Safe torque off input on the inverter control unit. De-energizing the STO input terminals of other control units (supply, DC/DC converter, or brake unit) stops the unit but does not constitute a SIL/PL classified safety function.

Safety functions module connection (X12)

In drives or inverter units with a compatible control program, an optional FSO safety functions module can be connected to the X12 connector. The control program in supply, brake, and DC/DC converter units does not support the FSO safety functions module.

For more information on the FSO safety functions module, refer to the applicable FSO module user's manual.

Note: Inverter modules and control units that have a sticker with the text "No FSO support" are not compatible with the FSO safety functions module.

Connector data

The wire size accepted by all screw terminals (for both stranded and solid wire) is $0.5 \dots 2.5 \text{ mm}^2$ (22...12 AWG). Connector pitch is 5 mm.

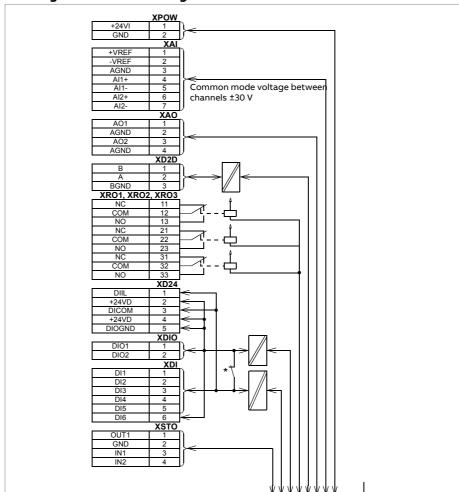
The maximum tightening torque for screw terminals is 0.5 N·m (5 lbf·in).

Power supply (XPOW)	24 V DC (±10%), 2 A External power input.
Relay outputs RO1RO3 (XRO1XRO3)	250 V AC / 30 V DC, 2 A Protected by varistors
+24 V output (XD24:5 and XD24:7)	Total load capacity of these outputs is 4.8 W (200 mA / 24 V) minus the power taken by DIO1 and DIO2.
Digital inputs DI1DI6 (XDI:1XDI:6)	24 V logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 15 V $R_{\rm in}$: 2.0 kohm (DI1DI5) Input type: NPN/PNP (DI1DI5), PNP (DI6) Hardware filtering: 0.04 ms, digital filtering up to 8 ms $I_{\rm max}$: 15 mA (DI1DI5), 5 mA (DI6)
Start interlock input DIIL (XD24:1)	24 V logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 15 V $R_{\rm in}$: 2.0 kohm Input type: NPN/PNP Hardware filtering: 0.04 ms, digital filtering up to 8 ms
Digital inputs/outputs DIO1 and DIO2 (XDIO:1 and XDIO:2) Input/output mode selection by parameters. DIO1 can be configured as a frequency input (016 kHz with hardware filtering of 4 microseconds) for 24 V level square wave signal (sinusoidal or other wave form cannot be used). In some control programs, DIO2 can be configured as a 24 V level square wave frequency output. Refer to the firmware manual, parameter group 11.	As inputs: 24 V logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 15 V. R _{in} : 2.0 kohm. Filtering: 1 ms. Maximum input voltage is 26 V. As outputs: Total output current from +24VD is limited to 200 mA +24VD DIOX DIOX DIOGND
Reference voltage for analog inputs +VREF and -VREF (XAI:1 and XAI:2)	10 V $\pm 1\%$ and -10 V $\pm 1\%$, $R_{\rm load}$ 110 kohm Maximum output current: 10 mA

Analog inputs Al1 and Al2 (XAl:4 XAl:7). Current/voltage input mode selection by jumpers	Current input: -2020 mA, $R_{\rm in}$ = 100 ohm Voltage input: -1010 V, $R_{\rm in}$ > 200 kohm Differential inputs, common mode range ±30 V Sampling interval per channel: 0.25 ms Hardware filtering: 0.25 ms Resolution: 11 bit + sign bit Inaccuracy: 1% of full scale range
Analog outputs AO1 and AO2 (XAO)	020 mA, R _{load} < 500 ohm Frequency range: 0300 Hz Resolution: 11 bit + sign bit Inaccuracy: 2% of full scale range
XD2D connector	Physical layer: RS-485 Transmission rate: 8 Mbit/s Cable type: Shielded twisted-pair cable with a twisted pair for data and a wire or another pair for signal ground (nominal impedance 100 165 ohm, for example Belden 9842) Maximum length of link: 50 m (164 ft) Termination by jumper
RS-485 connection (X485)	Physical layer: RS-485 Cable type: Shielded twisted-pair cable with a twisted pair for data and a wire or another pair for signal ground (nominal impedance 100 165 ohm, for example Belden 9842) Maximum length of link: 50 m (164 ft)
Safe torque off connection (XSTO)	Input voltage range: -330 V DC Logic levels: "0" < 5 V, "1" > 17 V. Note: Both circuits must be closed to enable start and operation (IN1 and IN2 must be connected to OUT). This applies to all control units (including drive, inverter, supply, brake, DC/DC converter etc. control units), but SIL/PL classified Safe torque off functionality is only achieved through the XSTO connector of the drive/inverter control unit. Current consumption: 30 mA (frames R1R7) or 12 mA (frames R8R9) (continuous) per STO channel EMC (immunity) according to IEC 61326-3-1 and IEC 61800-5-2

Control panel connection (X13)	Connector: RJ-45 Cable length < 100 m (328 ft)
The terminals of the control unit fu	Ifill the Protective Extra Low Voltage (PELV) requirements.

The terminals of the control unit fulfill the Protective Extra Low Voltage (PELV) requirements. The PELV requirements of a relay output are not fulfilled if a voltage higher than 48 V is connected to the relay output.



ZCU ground isolation diagram

* Ground selector (J6) settings



All digital inputs share a common ground (DICOM connected to DIOGND). This is the default setting.

170 Control unit



Ground of digital inputs DI1...DI5 and DIIL (DICOM) is isolated from DIO signal ground (DIOGND).

Isolation voltage 50 V.



Installation checklist

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains a checklist for the mechanical and electrical installation of the drive.

Checklist



AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.



AWARNING Do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.

Examine the mechanical and electrical installation of the drive before start-up. Do the tasks in the checklist together with a second person.

Make sure that	
The ambient operating conditions meet the drive ambient conditions specification and enclosure rating (IP code).	
The supply voltage matches the nominal input voltage of the drive. Refer to the type designation label.	

172 Installation checklist

Make sure that	
The insulation resistance of the input power cable, motor cable and motor is measured according to local regulations and the manuals of the drive.	
The drive is attached securely on an even, vertical and non-flammable wall.	
The cooling air can flow freely in and out of the drive.	
If the drive is connected to a network other than a symmetrically grounded TN-S system: You have done all the required modifications (for example, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter or ground-to-phase varistor). Refer to the electrical installation instructions.	
Appropriate AC fuses and main disconnecting device are installed.	
There is an adequately sized protective earth (ground) conductor(s) between the drive and the switchboard, the conductor is connected to correct terminal, and the terminal is tightened to the correct torque. Grounding has also been measured according to the regulations.	
The input power cable is connected to the correct terminals, the phase order is correct, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	
There is an adequately sized protective earth (ground) conductor between the motor and the drive. The conductor is connected to the correct terminal, and the terminal is tightened to the correct torque.	
Grounding has also been measured according to the regulations.	
The motor cable is connected to the correct terminals, the phase order is correct, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	
The motor cable is routed away from other cables.	
No power factor compensation capacitors are connected to the motor cable.	
If an external brake resistor is connected to the drive: There is an adequately sized protective earth (ground) conductor between the brake resistor and the drive, and the conductor is connected to the correct terminal, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque. Grounding has also been measured according to the regulations.	
If an external brake resistor is connected to the drive: The brake resistor cable is connected to the correct terminals, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	
If an external brake resistor is connected to the drive: The brake resistor cable is routed away from other cables.	

Make sure that	\Box
The control cables are connected to the correct terminals, and the terminals are tightened to the correct torque.	
If a drive bypass connection will be used: The direct-on-line contactor of the motor and the drive output contactor are either mechanically and/or electrically interlocked, that is, they cannot be closed at the same time. A thermal overload device must be used for protection when bypassing the drive. Refer to local codes and regulations.	
There are no tools, foreign objects or dust from drilling inside the drive.	
The area in front of the drive is clean: the drive cooling fan cannot draw any dust or dirt inside. $ \\$	
Drive covers and the terminal box cover of the motor are in place.	
The motor and the driven equipment are ready for power-up.	



Start-up

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the start-up procedure of the drive.

Reforming the capacitors

The capacitors must be reformed if the drive has not been powered (either in storage or unused) for a year or more. The manufacturing date is on the type designation label. For information on reforming the capacitors, refer to Capacitor reforming instructions (3BFE64059629 [English]).

Start-up procedure

- Run setup of the drive control program according to the start-up instructions given in quick start-up guide for ACS880 primary control program or in the firmware manual.
 - For drives with resistor braking (option +D150): see also section Start-up in chapter Resistor braking.
 - For drives with ABB sine filter, check that parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is set to ABB sine filter. For other sine filters, see Sine filter hardware manual (3AXD50000016814 [English]).
 - For drives with ABB motors in explosive atmospheres, see also ACS880 drives with ABB motors in explosive atmospheres (3AXD50000019585 [English]).
- 2. Validate the Safe torque off function according to the instructions given in chapter The Safe torque off function.



3. Validate the safety functions (options +Q923 or +Q973) as described in FSO-12 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015612 [English]) or FSO-21 safety functions module user's manual (3AXD50000015614 [English]).





Fault tracing

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the fault tracing possibilities of the drive.

LEDs

Where	LED	Color	When the LED is lit
Control panel mounting platform	POWER	Green	Control unit is powered and +15 V is supplied to the con- trol panel.
	FAULT	Red	Drive in fault state.

Warning and fault messages

See the firmware manual for the descriptions, causes and remedies of the drive control program warning and fault messages.



Maintenance

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains maintenance instructions.



▲ WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

Maintenance intervals

The tables show the maintenance tasks that can be done by the end user. For the ABB Service offering, contact your local ABB Service representative (new.abb.com/contact-centers).

Description of symbols

Action	Description
I	Inspection (visual inspection and maintenance action if needed)
P	Performance of on/off-site work (commissioning, tests, measurements or other work)
R	Replacement

Recommended maintenance intervals after start-up

Annual ac- tion	Target
P	Quality of supply voltage
I	Spare parts
Р	DC circuit capacitor reforming, spare modules and spare capacitors
I	Tightness of terminals
ı	Dustiness, corrosion or temperature
I	Heat sink cleaning

Component		Years from start-up								
	3	6	9	12	15	18	20	21		
Cooling										
Main cooling fan			R			R				
Auxiliary cooling fan for circuit boards (frames R1 to R9)			R			R				
Auxiliary cooling fan IP55 (frames R8 and R9)			R			R				
Aging										
Battery for ZCU control unit		R		R		R				
Battery for control panel			R			R				
Functional safety										
Safety function test		I See the maintenance information of the safety function								
Safety component expiry (Mission time, $T_{\rm M}$) 20 years										
4FPS10000239703										

Note:

- The maintenance and component replacement intervals are based on the
 assumption that the equipment operates within the specified ratings and
 ambient conditions. ABB recommends annual drive inspections to ensure the
 highest reliability and optimum performance.
- Long-term operation near the specified maximum ratings or ambient conditions may require shorter maintenance intervals for certain components. Contact your local ABB Service representative for additional maintenance recommendations.

Cleaning the exterior of the drive



AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Clean the exterior of the drive. Use:
 - vacuum cleaner with an antistatic hose and nozzle
 - soft brush
 - dry or damp (not wet) cleaning cloth. Moisten with clean water, or mild detergent (pH 5...9 for metal, pH 5...7 for plastic).

NOTICE Do not use too much water, a hose, or steam to clean the drive. Moisture can go into the drive and cause damage.

Cleaning the heatsink

The heatsink of the power module (drive, supply, inverter, converter, etc.) pick up dust from the cooling air. This can cause overtemperature warnings and faults. When necessary, clean the heatsink as follows.





ACAUTION Use the required personal protective equipment. Wear protective gloves and long sleeves. Some parts have sharp edges.

- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the module cooling fan(s). Refer to the separate instructions.
- 3. Protect the adjacent equipment from dust.
- Blow dry, clean and oil-free compressed air from bottom to top and simultaneously use a vacuum cleaner at the air outlet to trap the dust.

NOTICE Use an antistatic wrist strap and a vacuum cleaner with an antistatic hose and nozzle. A normal vacuum cleaner creates static discharges which can cause damage to circuit boards.

5. Reinstall the cooling fan.

Fans

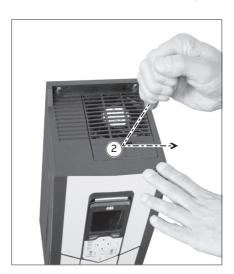
The lifespan of the cooling fans of the drive depend on the running time of the fan, ambient temperature and dust concentration. See the firmware manual for the actual signal which indicates the running time of the cooling fan.

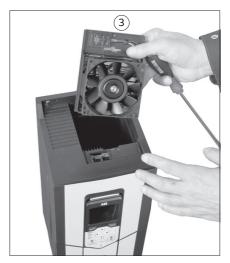
Reset the running time signal after a fan replacement. Also, reset the maintenance counter, if used.

Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R1...R3



- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. To release the retaining clip, push with a flat screwdriver and turn to the right.
- 3. Lift the fan assembly up.
- 4. Install the new fan assembly in reverse order. Make sure that the fan blows upwards.
- 5. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

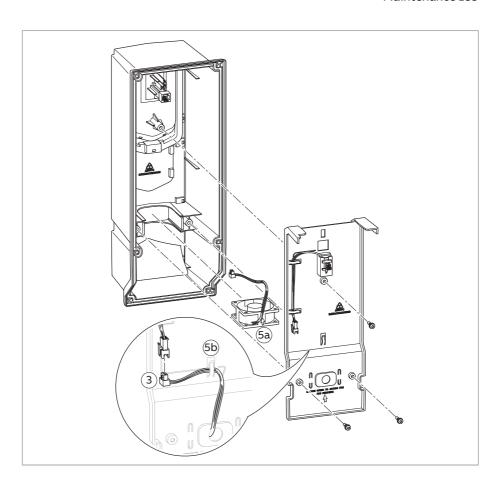




Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of IP55 frames R1...R3



- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. To remove the front cover, undo the mounting screws at the sides.
- 3. Unplug the fan power supply wires. This fan is installed to X210:FAN2 in control unit.
- 4. Lift the fan off.
- 5. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow (5a) on the fan points upwards. Bundle the wires under the clip (5b).



Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R4 and R5



- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Lift the fan mounting plate up from the front edge.
- 3. Unplug the power supply wires.
- 4. Lift the fan assembly off.
- 5. Install the new fan assembly in reverse order. Make sure that the fan blows upwards.
- 6. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.





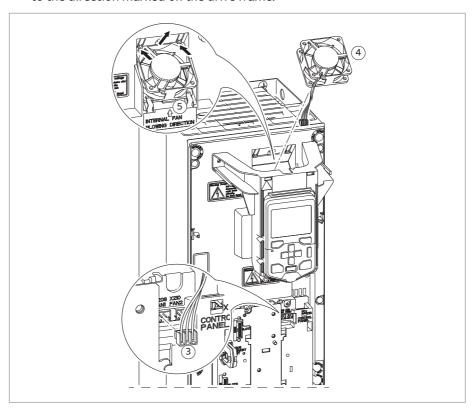


Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R4 and R5

This fan is included in R5 types ACS880-01-xxxx-7 and with option +B056+C135.



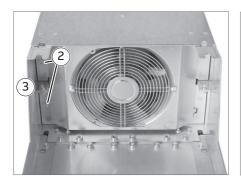
- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the front cover.
- 3. Unplug the fan power supply wires.
- 4. Lift the fan up.
- 5. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow in the fan points to the direction marked on the drive frame.



Replacing the main cooling fan of frames R6...R8



- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Undo the mounting screws of the fan mounting plate (view from bottom below).
- 3. Pull the fan mounting plate down from the side edge.
- 4. Unplug the power supply wires.
- 5. Lift the fan mounting plate off.
- 6. Remove the fan from the mounting plate.
- 7. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the fan blows upwards.
- 8. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.





Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan of frames R6...R9 (IP21, UL Type 1)



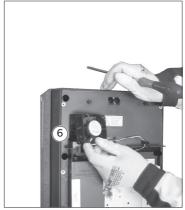
- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the lower front cover.
- Unplug the control panel power supply wires from the control unit terminal X13 and the auxiliary cooling fan power supply wires from the terminal X208:FAN1.
- 4. Remove the upper front cover.
- 5. Release the retaining clips.
- 6. Lift the fan up.
- 7. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.

190 Maintenance









Replacing the second auxiliary cooling fan of frame R9 (IP55, UL Type 12)

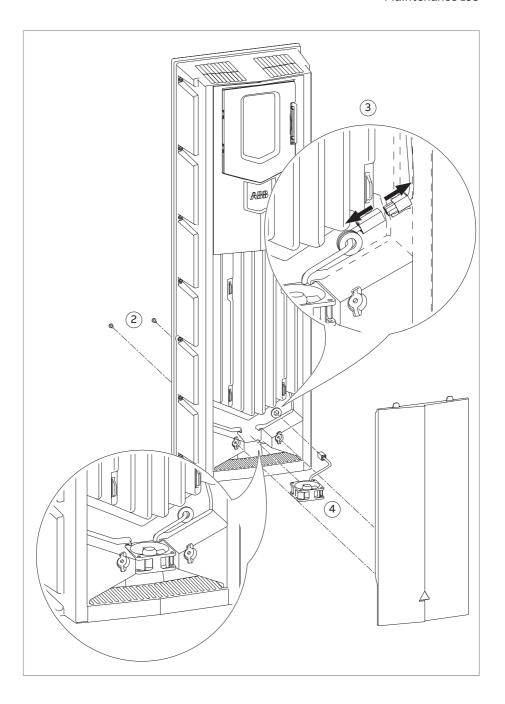


- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the IP55 front cover. Disconnect the power supply wire of the auxiliary cooling fan in the cover (see section Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frames R8 and R9 (page 192)).
- 3. Unplug the fan power supply wires.
- 4. Release the retaining clips.
- 5. Lift the the fan off.
- 6. Unplug the power supply wire from the branching plug.
- 7. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
- 8. Replace the front cover.
- 9. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

Replacing the auxiliary cooling fan in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frames R8 and R9



- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the lower front cover from the cover.
- 3. Disconnect the fan power supply wires. This fan is installed to X210:FAN2 in control unit.
- 4. Remove the fan.
- 5. Install the new fan in reverse order. Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
- 6. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.



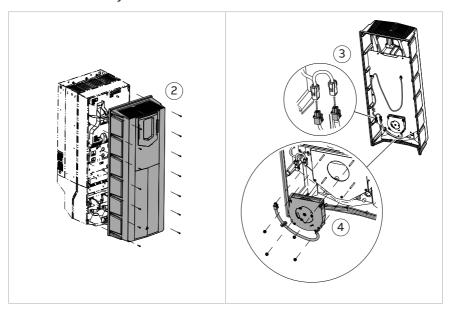
■ Replacing the auxiliary cooling fans in the IP55 (UL Type 12) cover, frame R9 (drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5)



▲ WARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

To replace the fan at the back side of the cover:

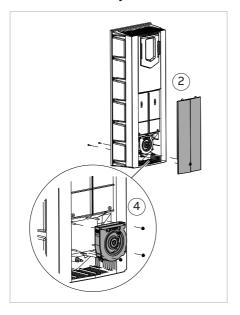
- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- Remove the front cover.
- 3. Disconnect the fan power supply wire. There are two wires, one for the fan at the back side of the cover and one for the fan at the front side of the cover.
- 4 Remove the fan
- 5. Install the new fan in reverse order.
 - Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
 - Make sure that you connect the new fan to the correct connector.



6. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

To replace the fan at the front side of the cover:

- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the lower front cover from the cover.
- 3. Disconnect the fan power supply wire. Refer to step three in the previous instruction.
- 4. Remove the fan.
- 5. Install the new fan in reverse order.
 - Make sure that the arrow on the fan points up.
 - Make sure that you connect the new fan to the correct connector.



6. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.

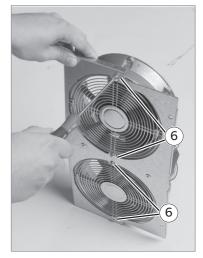
Replacing the main cooling fans of frame R9



- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Undo the two mounting screws of the fan mounting plate (view from drive bottom below).
- 3. Turn the mounting plate downwards.
- 4. Disconnect the fan power supply wires.
- 5. Remove the fan mounting plate.
- 6. Remove the fans by undoing the mounting screws.
- 7. Install the new fans in reverse order. Make sure that the fans blows upwards.
- 8. Reset the counter (if used) in group 5 in the primary control program.







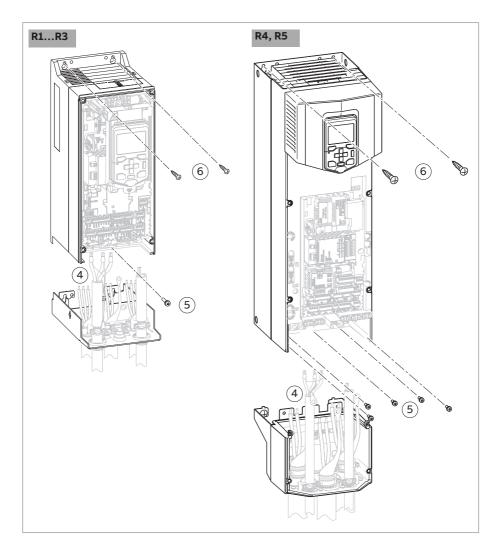
Replacing the drive (IP21, UL Type 1, frames R1...R9)

This section gives instructions for replacing the drive module without the cable entry box. This allows you to leave the cables installed (except from disconnecting the conductors).

Note: <u>IP55 (UL Type 12) drives:</u> It is not allowed to remove the cable entry box.



- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Remove the front covers.
- 3. <u>For frames R6...R9:</u> Remove the side plates of the cable entry box by loosening the mounting screws.
- 4. Disconnect the power and control cables.
- 5. Undo the screw(s) that fasten the drive module to the cable entry box.
- 6. Undo the two screws or bolts that attach the drive module to the wall from top.
- Undo the two screws or bolts which attach the drive module and cable entry box to the wall. Leave the lower wall mounting screws of the cable box in place.
- 8. Lift the drive off.
- 9. Install the new drive module in reverse order.



Capacitors

The intermediate DC circuit of the drive contains several electrolytic capacitors. Operating time, load, and surrounding air temperature have an effect on the life of the capacitors. Capacitor life can be extended by decreasing the surrounding air temperature.

Capacitor failure is usually followed by damage to the unit and an input cable fuse failure, or a fault trip. If you think that any capacitors in the drive have failed, contact ABB.

Reforming the capacitors

The capacitors must be reformed if the drive has not been powered (either in storage or unused) for a year or more. The manufacturing date is on the type designation label. For information on reforming the capacitors, refer to Capacitor reforming instructions (3BFE64059629 [English]).

Control panel

Refer to ACS-AP-I, -S, -W and ACH-AP-H, -W Assistant control panels user's manual (3AUA0000085685 [English]).

Control unit

For maintenance information of the UCU-20 control unit (option +V998), refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

Replacing the memory unit of ZCU-12

After replacing a control unit, you can retain the existing parameter settings by transferring the memory unit from the defective control unit to the new control unit. After power-up, the drive will scan the memory unit. This can take several minutes.

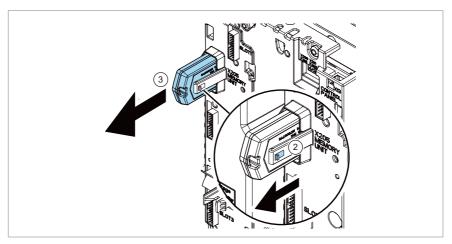


AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.



AWARNING Do not remove or install the memory unit when the control unit is energized. There can be a risk of electric shock from relay outputs or adjacent equipment. Also, damage to the control unit or memory unit can occur.

- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- Pull the clip at the side of the memory up.



- 3. Take the unit off.
- 4. Install the unit in reverse order.

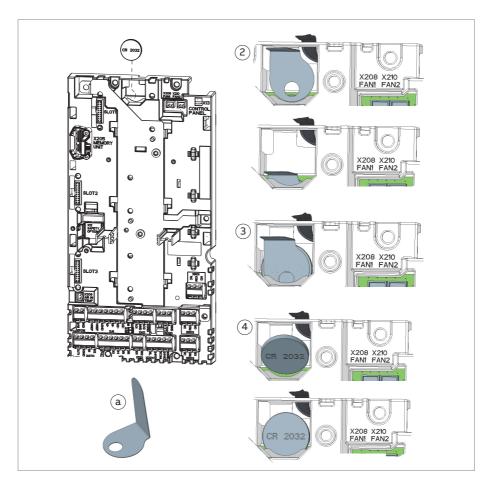
Replacing the ZCU-12 control unit battery

/ i

AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

You can change the control unit battery with a battery ejector (a in the drawing below) or, for example, with a flat screwdriver. You can order a battery replacement kit that contains a battery ejector and type CR2032 battery from ABB service.

- 1. Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Move the battery ejector into the battery slot on the battery.
- 3. Carefully pull the battery out of the battery holder.
- 4. Carefully put a new CR2032 battery into the battery holder.



Replacing safety functions modules (FSO-12, option +Q973 and FSO-21, option +Q972)

Do not repair safety functions modules. Replace a faulty module with a new one as described in section Installing FSO safety functions module onto ZCU-12 control unit (page 134).

Functional safety components

The mission time of functional safety components is 20 years which equals the time during which failure rates of electronic components remain constant. This applies to the components of the standard Safe torque off circuit as well as any modules, relays and, typically, any other components that are part of functional safety circuits.

202 Maintenance

The expiry of mission time terminates the certification and SIL/PL classification of the safety function. The following options exist:

- Renewal of the whole drive and all optional functional safety module(s) and components.
- Renewal of the components in the safety function circuit. In practice, this is
 economical only with larger drives that have replaceable circuit boards and
 other components such as relays.

Note that some of the components may already have been renewed earlier, restarting their mission time. The remaining mission time of the whole circuit is however determined by its oldest component.

For more information, contact ABB.



Technical data

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains the technical specifications of the drive including the ratings, sizes and technical requirements, provisions for fulfilling the requirements for CE, UL and other approval marks.

Marine type-approved drives (option +C132)

Refer to ACS880-01..., ACS880-04..., ACS880-11..., ACS880-31..., ACS880-14... and ACS880-34... +C132 marine type-approved drives supplement (3AXD50000010521 [English]) for the ratings, marine-specific data and reference to valid marine type approvals.

Drives for SynRM motors

Refer to ACS880-01 drives for SynRM motors supplement (3AXD50000029482 [English]) for the ratings, fuses and other technical data.

Electrical ratings

The nominal ratings for the drives with 50 Hz and 60 Hz supply are given below. The symbols are described below the tables. ABB recommends the DriveSize dimensioning tool for selecting the drive, motor and gear combination.

				IEC R	ATINGS					
ACS880-	Frame					Output	ratings	i		
01	size	rating		Nomir	nal use		Light-d	luty use	_	/-duty se
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	l ₂	P _n	S _n	I _{Ld}	P _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	P _{Hd}
		A	Α	A	kW	kVA	Α	kW	Α	kW
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V				,	,			,		,
04A6-2	R1	4.6	6.3	4.6	0.75	1.8	4.4	0.75	3.7	0.55
06A6-2	R1	6.6	7.8	6.6	1.1	2.6	6.3	1.1	4.6	0.75
07A5-2	R1	7.5	11.2	7.5	1.5	3.0	7.1	1.5	6.6	1.1
10A6-2	R1	10.6	12.8	10.6	2.2	4.2	10.1	2.2	7.5	1.5
16A8-2	R2	16.8	18.0	16.8	4.0	7	16.0	4.0	10.6	2.2
24A3-2	R2	24.3	28.6	24.3	5.5	10	23.1	5.5	16.8	4.0
031A-2	R3	31.0	41	31	7.5	12	29.3	7.5	24.3	5.5
046A-2	R4	46	64	46	11	18	44	11	38	7.5
061A-2	R4	61	76	61	15	24	58	15	45	11.0
075A-2	R5	75	104	75	18.5	30	71	18.5	61	15
087A-2	R5	87	122	87	22	35	83	22	72	18.5
115A-2	R6	115	148	115	30	46	109	30	87	22
145A-2	R6	145	178	145	37	58	138	37	105	30
170A-2	R7	170	247	170	45	68	162	45	145	37
206A-2	R7	206	287	206	55	82	196	55	169	45
274A-2	R8	274	362	274	75	109	260	75	213	55
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V										
02A4-3	R1	2.4	3.1	2.4	0.75	1.7	2.3	0.75	1.8	0.55
03A3-3	R1	3.3	4.1	3.3	1.1	2.3	3.1	1.1	2.4	0.75
04A0-3	R1	4.0	5.6	4.0	1.5	2.8	3.8	1.5	3.3	1.1
05A6-3	R1	5.6	6.8	5.6	2.2	3.9	5.3	2.2	4.0	1.5
07A2-3	R1	8.0	9.5	8.0	3.0	5.5	7.6	3.0	5.6	2.2

				IEC R	ATINGS					
ACS880-	Frame					Output	ratings			
01	size	rating		Nomir	nal use		Light-d	utyuse	Heavy	-
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	I ₂	P _n	S _n	I _{Ld}	P _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	P _{Hd}
		A	Α	A	kW	kVA	Α	kW	Α	kW
09A4-3	R1	10.0	12.2	10.0	4.0	6.9	9.5	4.0	8.0	3.0
12A6-3	R1	12.9	16.0	12.9	5.5	8.9	12.0	5.5	10.0	4.0
017A-3	R2	17	21	17	7.5	12	16	7.5	12.6	5.5
025A-3	R2	25	29	25	11	17	24	11	17	7.5
032A-3	R3	32	42	32	15	22	30	15	25	11
038A-3	R3	38	54	38	18.5	26	36	18.5	32	15.0
045A-3	R4	45	64	45	22	31	43	22	38	18.5
061A-3	R4	61	76	61	30	42	58	30	45	22
072A-3	R5	72	104	72	37	50	68	37	61	30
087A-3	R5	87	122	87	45	60	83	45	72	37
105A-3	R6	105	148	105	55	73	100	55	87	45
145A-3	R6	145	178	145	75	100	138	75	105	55
169A-3	R7	169	247	169	90	117	161	90	145	75
206A-3	R7	206	287	206	110	143	196	110	169	90
246A-3	R8	246	350	246	132	170	234	132	206	110
293A-3	R8	293	418	293	160	203	278	160	246*	132
363A-3	R9	363	498	363	200	251	345	200	293	160
430A-3	R9	430	545	430	250	298	400	200	363**	200
490A-3 ¹⁾	R9	450	680	490	250	339	480**	250	375****	200
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V										
02A1-5	R1	2.1	3.1	2.1	0.75	1.8	2.0	0.55	1.7	0.55
03A0-5	R1	3.0	4.1	3.0	1.1	2.6	2.8	1.1	2.1	0.75
03A4-5	R1	3.4	5.6	3.4	1.1	2.9	3.2	1.1	3.0	1.1
04A8-5	R1	4.8	6.8	4.8	1.5	4.2	4.6	1.5	3.4	1.1
05A2-5	R1	5.2	9.5	5.2	2.2	4.5	5.0	2.2	4.8	1.5
07A6-5	R1	7.6	12.2	7.6	3.0	6.6	7.2	3.0	5.2	2.2

				IEC R	ATINGS					
ACS880-	Frame					Output	ratings			
01	size	rating		Nomir	nal use		Light-d	uty use	Heavy	-
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	I ₂	P _n	S _n	I _{Ld}	P _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	P _{Hd}
		A	Α	A	kW	kVA	A	kW	A	kW
11A0-5	R1	11.0	16.0	11.0	4.0	9.5	10.4	4.0	7.6	3.0
014A-5	R2	14	21	14	5.5	12	13	5.5	11	4.0
021A-5	R2	21	29	21	7.5	18	19	7.5	14	5.5
027A-5	R3	27	42	27	11.0	23	26	11.0	21	7.5
034A-5	R3	34	54	34	15.0	29	32	15.0	27	11
040A-5	R4	40	64	40	18.5	35	38	18.5	34	15
052A-5	R4	52	76	52	22	45	49	22	40	18.5
065A-5	R5	65	104	65	30	56	62	30	52	22
077A-5	R5	77	122	77	37	67	73	37	65	30
096A-5	R6	96	148	96	45	83	91	45	77	37
124A-5	R6	124	178	124	55	107	118	55	96	45
156A-5	R7	156	247	156	75	135	148	75	124	55
180A-5	R7	180	287	180	90	156	171	90	156	75
240A-5	R8	240	350	240	110	208	228	110	180	90
260A-5	R8	260	418	260	132	225	247	132	240*	110
361A-5	R9	361	542	361	200	313	343	160	302	160
414A-5	R9	414	542	414	250	359	393	200	361**	200
477A-5 ¹⁾	R9	450	600	477	250	412	454**	250	385***	200
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V						l				
02A1-5	R1	2.1	3.1	2.1	0.75	1.8	2.0	0.75	1.7	0.55
03A0-5	R1	3.0	4.1	3.0	1.1	2.6	2.8	1.1	2.1	0.75
03A4-5	R1	3.4	5.6	3.4	1.5	2.9	3.2	1.5	3.0	1.1
04A8-5	R1	4.8	6.8	4.8	2.2	4.2	4.6	2.2	3.4	1.5
05A2-5	R1	5.2	9.5	5.2	3.0	4.5	4.9	3.0	4.8	2.2
07A6-5	R1	7.6	12.2	7.6	4.0	6.6	7.2	4.0	5.2	3.0
11A0-5	R1	11.0	16.0	11.0	5.5	9.5	10.4	5.5	7.6	4.0

				IEC R	ATINGS					
ACS880-	Frame					Output	ratings			
01	size	rating		Nomir	nal use		Light-d	uty use	Heavy	•
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	I ₂	P _n	S _n	I _{Ld}	P _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	P _{Hd}
		Α	Α	A	kW	kVA	Α	kW	Α	kW
014A-5	R2	14	21	14	7.5	12	13	7.5	11	5.5
021A-5	R2	21	29	21	11	18	19	11	14	7.5
027A-5	R3	27	42	27	15	23	26	15	21	11
034A-5	R3	34	54	34	18.5	29	32	18.5	27	15
040A-5	R4	40	64	40	22	35	38	22	34	19
052A-5	R4	52	76	52	30	45	49	30	40	22
065A-5	R5	65	104	65	37	56	62	37	52	30
077A-5	R5	77	122	77	45	67	73	45	65	37
096A-5	R6	96	148	96	55	83	91	55	77	45
124A-5	R6	124	178	124	75	107	118	75	96	55
156A-5	R7	156	247	156	90	135	148	90	124	75
180A-5	R7	180	287	180	110	156	171	110	156	90
240A-5	R8	240	350	240	132	208	228	132	180	110
260A-5	R8	260	418	260	160	225	247	160	240*	132
361A-5	R9	361	542	361	200	313	343	200	302	200
414A-5	R9	414	542	414	250	359	393	250	361 **	200
477A-5 ¹⁾	R9	450	600	477	250	412	454**	250	385***	200
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V										
07A4-7	R3	7.4	12.2	7.4	5.5	8.8	7.0	5.5	5.6	4
09A9-7	R3	9.9	18	9.9	7.5	11.8	9.4	7.5	7.4	5.5
14A3-7	R3	14.3	22	14.3	11	17	13.6	11	9.9	7.5
019A-7	R3	19	29	19	15	23	18	15	14.3	11
023A-7	R3	23	38	23	18.5	27	22	18.5	19	15
027A-7	R3	27	46	27	22	32	26	22	23	18.5
035A-7	R5	35	64	35	30	42	33	30	26	22
042A-7	R5	42	70	42	37	50	40	37	35	30

	IEC RATINGS												
ACS880-	Frame	Input				Output	t ratings	i					
01	size	rating	Nominal use				Light-c	luty use	Heavy-duty use				
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	I ₂	P _n	S _n	I _{Ld}	P _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	P _{Hd}			
		Α	Α	A	kW	kVA	Α	kW	Α	kW			
049A-7	R5	49	71	49	45	59	47	45	42	37			
061A-7	R6	61	104	61	55	73	58	55	49	45			
084A-7	R6	84	124	84	75	100	80	75	61	55			
098A-7	R7	98	168	98	90	117	93	90	84	75			
119A-7	R7	119	198	119	110	142	113	110	98	90			
142A-7	R8	142	250	142	132	170	135	132	119	110			
174A-7	R8	174	274	174	160	208	165	160	142	132			
210A-7	R9	210	384	210	200	251	200	200	174	160			
271A-7	R9	271	411	271	250	324	257	250	210	200			

¹⁾ For high-speed variant (+N7500) availability, contact ABB.

				UL (NEC) RATIN	GS					
ACS880- 01	Frame	Input rating				Output	ratings				
31 SI	size	rucing	Max. cur- rent	App. power					Heavy-duty use		
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	S _n	I _{Ld}	P	Ld	I _{Hd}	P	Hd	
		Α	Α	kVA	Α	kW	hp	A	kW	hp	
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V				,		,	,		,		
04A6-2	R1	4.4	6.3	1.8	4.4	0.75	1.0	3.7	0.55	0.75	
06A6-2	R1	6.3	7.8	2.6	6.3	1.1	1.5	4.6	0.75	1.0	
07A5-2	R1	7.1	11.2	3.0	7.1	1.5	2.0	6.6	1.1	1.5	
10A6-2	R1	10.1	12.8	4.2	10.1	2.2	3.0	7.5	1.5	2.0	
16A8-2	R2	16.0	18.0	7	16.0	4.0	5.0	10.6	2.2	3.0	
24A3-2	R2	23.1	28.6	10	23.1	5.5	7.5	16.8	4.0	5.0	
031A-2	R3	29.3	41	12	29.3	7.5	10	24.3	5.5	7.5	
046A-2	R4	44	64	18	44	11	15	38	7.5	10	

				UL (NEC) RATIN	GS				
ACS880-	Frame					Output	ratings			
01	size	rating	Max. cur- rent	App. power	Light-duty use			Heavy-duty use		
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	S _n	I _{Ld}	P	Ld	I _{Hd}	P	Hd
		Α	A	kVA	Α	kW	hp	Α	kW	hp
061A-2	R4	58	76	24	58	15	20	45	11.0	15
075A-2	R5	71	104	30	71	18.5	25	61	15	20
087A-2	R5	83	122	35	83	22	30	72	18.5	25
115A-2	R6	109	148	46	109	30	40	87	22	30
145A-2	R6	138	178	58	138	37	50	105	30	40
170A-2	R7	162	247	68	162	45	60	145	37	50
206A-2	R7	196	287	82	196	55	75	169	45	60
274A-2	R8	260	362	109	260	75	100	213	55	75
<i>U</i> _n = 480 V										
02A1-5	R1	2.1	3.1	1.8	2.1	0.75	1.0	1.7	0.55	0.75
03A0-5	R1	3.0	4.1	2.6	3.0	1.1	1.5	2.1	0.75	1.0
03A4-5	R1	3.4	5.6	2.9	3.4	1.5	2.0	3.0	1.1	1.5
04A8-5	R1	4.8	6.8	4.2	4.8	2.2	3.0	3.4	1.5	2.0
05A2-5	R1	5.2	9.5	4.5	5.2	3.0	3.0	4.8	1.5	2.0
07A6-5	R1	7.6	12.2	6.6	7.6	4.0	5.0	5.2	2.2	3.0
11A0-5	R1	11	16.0	9.5	11	5.5	7.5	7.6	4.0	5.0
014A-5	R2	14	21	12	14	7.5	10	11	5.5	7.5
021A-5	R2	21	29	18	21	11	15	14	7.5	10
027A-5	R3	27	42	23	27	15	20	21	11	15
034A-5	R3	34	54	29	34	18.5	25	27	15	20.0
040A-5	R4	40	64	35	40	22	30	34	18.5	25
052A-5	R4	52	76	45	52	30	40	40	22	30
065A-5	R5	65	104	56	65	37	50	52	30	40
077A-5	R5	77	122	67	77	45	60	65	37	50
096A-5	R6	96	148	83	96	55	75	77	45	60
124A-5	R6	124	178	107	124	75	100	96	55	75

				UL (NEC) RATIN	GS				
ACS880-	Frame					Output	ratings	;		
01	size	rating	Max. cur- rent	App. power	Ligl	nt-duty	use	Heavy-duty use		
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	S _n	I _{Ld}	P	Ld	I _{Hd}	P	Hd
		A	A	kVA	Α	kW	hp	Α	kW	hp
156A-5	R7	156	247	135	156	90	125	124	75	100
180A-5	R7	180	287	156	180	110	150	156	90	125
240A-5	R8	240	350	208	240	132	200	180	110	150
260A-5	R8	260	418	225	260	132	200	240*	110	150
302A-5	R9	302	498	262	302	200	250	260	132	200
361A-5	R9	361	542	313	361	200	300	302	200	250
414A-5	R9	414	542	359	414*	250	350	361**	200	300
477A-5 ¹⁾	R9	450	600	412	454**	250	350	385***	200	300
<i>U</i> _n = 575 V										
07A4-7	R3	7.0	12.2	8.8	7.0	4.0	5.0	5.6	3.0	3.0
09A9-7	R3	9.4	18	11.8	9.4	5.5	7.5	7.4	4.0	5.0
14A3-7	R3	13.6	22	17	13.6	7.5	10	9.9	5.5	7.5
019A-7	R3	18	29	23	18	11	15	14.3	7.5	10
023A-7	R3	22	38	27	22	15	20	19	11	15
027A-7	R3	27	46	32	27	18.5	25	23	15	20
035A-7	R5	41	64	42	41	30	40	32	22	30
042A-7	R5	52	70	50	52	37	50	41	30	40
049A-7	R5	52	71	59	52	37	50	41	30	40
061A-7	R6	62	104	73	62	45	60	52	37	50
084A-7	R6	77	124	100	77	55	75	62	45	60
098A-7	R7	99	168	117	99	75	100	77	55	75
119A-7	R7	125	198	142	125	90	125	99	75	100
142A-7	R8	144	250	170	144	110	150	125	90	125
174A-7 (See Note 4 below)	R8	180	274	208	180	132	200	144	110	150

				UL (NEC) RATIN	GS					
ACS880- 01	Frame size	Input rating		Output ratings							
01	Size	racing	Max. cur- rent	cur- power							
		<i>I</i> ₁	I _{max}	S _n	I _{Ld}	P	Ld	I _{Hd}	P	Hd	
		Α	Α	kVA	Α	kW	hp	Α	kW	hp	
210A-7	R9	242	384	251	242	160	250	192	132	200	
271A-7 (See Note 5 below)	R9	271	411	324	271	200	250	242*	160	250	

¹⁾ For high-speed variant (+N7500) availability, contact ABB.

Definitions

- $U_{\rm n}$ Nominal voltage of the drive
- I_1 Nominal rms input current
- l_2 Nominal output current (available continuously with no over-loading)
- P_n Typical motor power in no-overload use
- S_n Apparent power
- I_{1 d} Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes
 - * I_{Ld} is 414 A in 30 °C ambient temperature and 393 A in 40 °C ambient temperature. The drive can deliver 414 A continuously with no overload in 40 °C.
 - **Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 50 seconds every 5 minutes (IP55 drives only)
- P_{1,d} Typical motor power in light-overload use
- $I_{\rm max}$ Maximum output current. Available for 10 seconds at start. Then as long as allowed by drive temperature.
- I_{Hd} Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - * Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - ** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - ***Continuous rms output current allowing 40% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - ****Continuous rms output current allowing 45% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
- P_{ud} Typical motor power in heavy-duty use
- Note 1: The ratings apply at an ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).
- **Note 2:** To achieve the rated motor power given in the table, the rated current of the drive must be greater than or equal to the rated motor current.
- Note 3: Typical motor power for 480 V UL (NEC) ratings applies to 460 V motors.
- **Note 4 ACS880-01-174A-7 amp rating:** The drive can deliver 192 A continuously with no overload.
- **Note 5 ACS880-01-271A-7 power rating:** The power rating is as per NEC Table 42.1. However, the drive can be used for a typical 4-pole motor rated to 300 hp meeting NEMA MG 1 Table 12-11 minimum efficiency standard (EPAct efficiency electrical motors) if motor full load current is not more than 271 A.

UL Listed drive multiple ratings

National Electric Code (NEC 2020) requires that drive input conductors are sized based on the drive nameplate input current rating and the output conductors are sized based on the full load motor current. There are several scenarios where this sizing procedure is not optimal including multi-motor systems, applications where a larger replacement drive is substituted in an emergency breakdown, and cases

where a motor is undersized for the drive. In these situations, power distribution components are often oversized to comply with NEC requirements.

ABB has collaborated with Underwriters Laboratories (UL) to create drive multiple ratings from 50% to 100% in 5% increments for the drive. For more information, refer to Multiple ratings for ABB ACS380-04, ACS580-01, ACQ580-01 and ACS880-01 drives manual supplement (3AXD50000916184 [English]).

Deratings

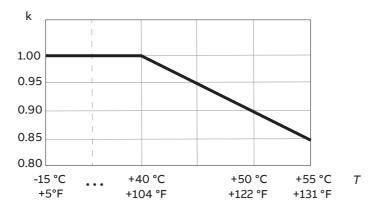
Surrounding air temperature derating

IP21 (UL Type 1) drives and IP55 (UL Type 12) frames R1...R7 and R9.

Note: IP55 drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998) have different air temperature limits. Refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

In the temperature range +40...55 °C (+104...131 °F), the rated output current is derated by 1% for every added 1 °C (1.8 °F).

To calculate the output current, multiply the current in the ratings table by the derating factor (k):



IP55 (UL Type 12) frame R8

Note: IP55 drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998) have different air temperature limits. Refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

ACS880- 01	Derated output current (I ₂)											
01	35 °C (95 °F)	40 °C (104 °F)	45 °C (113 °F)	50 °C (122 °F)	55 °C (131 °F)	Frame						
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V		*										

ACS880-			Perated outp	ut current (I ₂	.)	
01	35 °C (95 °F)	40 °C (104 °F)	45 °C (113 °F)	50 °C (122 °F)	55 °C (131 °F)	Frame
274A-2	274	274	260	226	192	R8
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V						
246A-3	246	246	234	221	209	R8
293A-3	293	293	278	242	209	R8
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V						
240A-5	240	240	228	216	186	R8
260A-5	260	260	247	216	186	R8
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V						
142A-7	142	142	135	128	121	R8
174A-7	174	174	165	144	122	R8

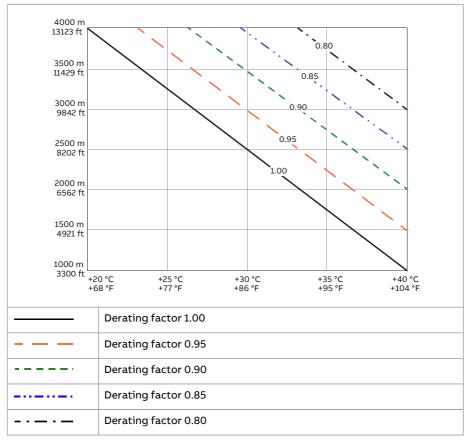
ACS880- 01		Derated output current (I _{Ld})										
01	35 °C (95 °F)	40 °C (104 °F)	45 °C (113 °F)	50 °C (122 °F)	55 °C (131 °F)	Frame						
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V												
274A-2	260	260	247	215	182	R8						

ACS880- 01	Derated output current (I _{Hd})									
	35 °C (95 °F)	40 °C (104 °F)	45 °C (113 °F)	50 °C (122 °F)	55 °C (131 °F)	Frame				
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V										
274A-2	213	213	202	176	149	R8				

Altitude derating

At altitudes more than $1000\,\mathrm{m}$ (3281 ft) above sea level, the output current derating is 1 percentage point for every added $100\,\mathrm{m}$ (328 ft). For example, the derating factor for 1500 m (4921 ft) is 0.95. The maximum permitted installation altitude is given in the technical data.

If the surrounding air temperature is less than +40 °C (104 °F), the derating can be reduced by 1.5 percentage points for every 1 °C (1.8 °F) reduction in temperature. A few altitude derating curves are shown below.



For a more accurate derating, use the DriveSize PC tool.

Deratings for special settings in the drive control program

Enabling special settings in the drive control program can require output current derating.

Ex motor, sine filter, low noise

Deratings are needed in these cases:

- drive is used with an ABB motor for explosive atmospheres (Ex) and "EX motor" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled
- sine filter given in the selection table in chapter Filters is used and "ABB Sine filter" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled
- "Low noise optimization" is selected in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode.

Note: If Ex motors are used together with sine filters, "EX motor" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is disabled and "ABB Sine filter" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled. Obey the instructions of the motor manufacturer.

With other than recommended sine filters and non-ABB Ex motors, contact ABB.

ACS880- 01	Setting	-	ter 95.15 bled	Ex motor	Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled Drive output ratings				
		Drive outp	out rating	js					
	Nominal use		Light- duty use	Heavy- duty use	Nominal use		Light- duty use	Heavy- duty use	
	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	<i>I</i> ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	/ _{Hd}	
									<i>U</i> _n = 230 V
04A6-2	4.6	0.75	4.4	3.7	4.3	0.55	4.1	3.5	
06A6-2	6.6	1.1	6.3	4.6	6.2	0.8	5.9	4.3	
07A5-2	7.5	1.5	7.1	6.6	7.4	1.5	7.0	6.2	
10A6-2	10.6	2.2	10.1	7.5	10.0	2.2	9.5	7.4	
16A8-2	16.8	4.0	16.0	10.6	15.9	4.0	15.1	10.0	
24A3-2	24.3	5.5	23.1	16.8	23.1	5.5	21.9	15.9	
031A-2	31	7.5	29.3	24.3	30.5	7.5	29.0	23.1	
046A-2	46	11.0	44	38	43.0	11.0	41	31	
061A-2	61	15	58	45	58	15	55	41	
075A-2	75	19	71	61	65	15	62	55	
087A-2	87	22	83	72	77	18.5	73	62	
115A-2	106	22	101	87	100	22	95	73	
145A-2	134	30	127	105	126	30	120	95	
170A-2	161	37	153	134	153	37	145	120	
206A-2	195	45	185	161	186	45	177	145	
274A-2	251	55	238	195	233	55	221	169	
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V									
02A4-3	2.4	0.75	2.3	1.80	2.3	0.75	2.2	1.7	
03A3-3	3.3	1.1	3.1	2.4	3.1	1.1	2.9	2.3	
04A0-3	4.0	1.5	3.8	3.3	3.8	1.5	3.6	3.1	

ACS880- 01	Setting of parameter 95.15: Ex motor enabled				Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled			
		Drive out	out rating	gs		Drive out	out rating	gs
	Nominal use			Heavy- duty use	Nomi	Nominal use		Heavy- duty use
	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}
	Α	kW	Α	Α	A	kW	Α	Α
05A6-3	5.6	2.2	5.3	4.0	5.3	2.2	5.0	3.8
07A2-3	8.0	3.0	7.6	5.6	7.2	3.0	6.8	5.3
09A4-3	10.0	4.0	9.5	8.0	9.2	4.0	8.7	7.2
12A6-3	12.9	5.5	12.0	10.0	12.1	5.5	11.5	9.2
017A-3	17	8	16	12.6	16	7.5	15	12
025A-3	25	11	24	17	24	11	23	16
032A-3	32	15	30	25	31	15	29	23
038A-3	38	19	36	32	37	18.5	35	31
045A-3	45	22	43	38	43	22	41	36
061A-3	61	30	58	45	58	30	55	43
072A-3	72	37	68	61	64	30	61	58
087A-3	87	45	83	72	77	37	73	64
105A-3	97	45	92	87	91	45	86	77
145A-3	134	55	127	97	126	55	120	91
169A-3	160	75	152	134	152	75	144	126
206A-3	195	90	185	160	186	90	177	152
246A-3	225	110	214	195	209	110	199	186
293A-3	269	132	256	225*	249	132	237	209*
363A-3	325	160	309	269	296	160	281	249
430A-3	385	200	366	325**	352	160	334	296**
490A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V								
02A1-5	2.1	0.75	2.0	1.7	1.9	0.55	1.8	1.5
03A0-5	3.0	1.1	2.8	2.1	2.8	0.75	2.7	1.9
03A4-5	3.4	1.5	3.2	3.0	3.1	1.1	2.9	2.8

ACS880- 01	Setting	•	ter 95.15 bled	: Ex motor	Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled Drive output ratings			
		Drive out	out rating	gs				
	Nominal use		Light- duty use	Heavy- duty use	Nomi	Nominal use		Heavy- duty use
	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}
	Α	kW	Α	Α	Α	kW	Α	Α
04A8-5	4.8	2.2	4.6	3.4	4.4	1.5	4.2	3.1
05A2-5	5.2	3.0	5.0	4.8	4.8	2.2	4.6	4.4
07A6-5	7.6	4.0	7.2	5.2	7.0	3.0	6.7	4.8
11A0-5	11.0	5.5	10.4	7.6	10.2	4.0	9.7	7.0
014A-5	14	7.5	13	11	13	5.5	12	10.2
021A-5	21	11.0	19	14	19	7.5	18	13
027A-5	27	15	26	21	25	11.0	24	19.0
034A-5	34	18.5	32	27.0	31	15	29	25
040A-5	40	22	38	34	34	18.5	32	31.0
052A-5	52	30	49	40	44	22	42	34
065A-5	65	37	62	52	52	30	49	44
077A-5	77	45	73	65	61	37	58	52
096A-5	88	45	84	77	82	45	78	61
124A-5	115	55	109	88	104	55	99	82
156A-5	147	75	140	115	140	75	133	104
180A-5	170	90	162	147	161	90	153	140
240A-5	220	110	209	170	204	110	194	161
260A-5	238	132	226	220*	221	110	210	204*
302A-5	270	160	257	238	242	132	230	221
361A-5	322	200	306	270	289	160	275	242
414A-5	370	200	352	322**	332	200	315	289**
477A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V								
07A4-7	7.4	5.5	7.0	5.6	7.0	4.0	6.7	5.6
09A9-7	9.9	7.5	9.4	7.4	9.4	5.5	8.9	7.0

ACS880- 01	Setting		ter 95.15 bled	Ex motor	Setting of parameter 95.15: ABB sine filter enabled			
		Drive out	out rating	js		Drive out	out rating	gs
	Nominal use		Light- duty use	Heavy- duty use	Nominal use		Light- duty use	Heavy- duty use
	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}	I ₂	P _n	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}
	Α	kW	Α	Α	Α	kW	Α	Α
14A3-7	14.3	11	13.6	9.9	13.6	7.5	12.9	9.4
019A-7	19	15	18	14.3	18	11	17	14
023A-7	23	18.5	22	19	22	15	21	18
027A-7	27	22	26	23	26	18.5	25	22
035A-7	35	30	33	26	33	22	31	24
042A-7	42	37	40	35	40	30	38	33
049A-7	49	45	47	42	46	37	44	40
061A-7	61	55	58	49	49	45	47	46
084A-7	84	75	80	61	68	55	65	49
098A-7	98	90	93	84	83	75	79	68
119A-7	119	110	113	98	101	90	96	83
142A-7	126	110	120	119	112	90	106	90
174A-7	154	132	146	126	137	110	130	112
210A-7	184	160	175	154	161	132	153	137
271A-7	238	200	226	184	207	160	197	161

Definitions

- U_n Nominal voltage of the drive
- *l*₂ Nominal output current (available continuously with no over-loading)
- P_n Typical motor power in no-overload use
- I_{I d} Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes
- $\it I_{Hd}$ Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - * Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - ** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
- $P_{\rm Hd}$ Typical motor power in heavy-duty use

The ratings apply at an ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

ACS880-01	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled						
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use				
	I ₂	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}				
	Α	A	A				
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V							
04A6-2	4.1	3.9	3.3				
06A6-2	5.9	5.6	4.1				
07A5-2	6.7	6.4	5.9				
10A6-2	9.5	9.0	6.7				
16A8-2	15.0	14.3	9.5				
24A3-2	22.0	20.9	15.0				
031A-2	30.0	28.5	22.0				
046A-2	41.0	39.0	30.0				
061A-2	56	53	41				
075A-2	56	53	47				
087A-2	67	64	56				
115A-2	94	89	67				
145A-2	118	112	94				
170A-2	146	139	118				
206A-2	178	169	146				
274A-2	216	205	178				
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V		<u>'</u>					
02A4-3	2.2	2.1	1.7				
03A3-3	3.0	2.9	2.2				
04A0-3	3.6	3.4	3.0				
05A6-3	5.0	4.8	3.6				
07A2-3	6.5	6.2	5.0				
09A4-3	8.5	8.1	6.5				
12A6-3	11.3	10.7	8.5				
017A-3	15	14.3	11.3				

ACS880-01	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled						
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use				
	I ₂	I _{Ld}	/ _{Hd}				
	Α	A	Α				
025A-3	22	20.9	15.0				
032A-3	30	29	22				
038A-3	35	33	30				
045A-3	41	39	35				
061A-3	56	53	41				
072A-3	56	53	47				
087A-3	67	64	56				
105A-3	86	82	67				
145A-3	118	112	86				
169A-3	146	139	118				
206A-3	178	169	146				
246A-3	194	184	178				
293A-3	236	224	194*				
363A-3	274	260	236				
430A-3	325	309	274**				
490A-3	-	-	-				
U _n = 500 V							
02A1-5	1.8	1.7	1.4				
03A0-5	2.6	2.5	1.8				
03A4-5	2.9	2.8	2.6				
04A8-5	4.1	3.9	2.9				
05A2-5	4.4	4.2	4.1				
07A6-5	6.5	6.2	4.4				
11A0-5	9.4	8.9	6.5				
014A-5	12.0	11.4	9.4				
021A-5	18.0	17.1	12.0				
027A-5	23.0	21.9	18.0				

ACS880-01	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled						
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use				
	I ₂	I _{Ld}	/ _{Hd}				
	Α	Α	Α				
034A-5	29	28	23				
040A-5	29	28	23				
052A-5	37	35	29				
065A-5	39	37	33				
077A-5	46	44	39				
096A-5	72	68	46				
124A-5	93	88	72				
156A-5	133	126	93				
180A-5	153	145	133				
240A-5	191	181	153				
260A-5	206	196	191*				
302A-5	206	196	191				
361A-5	258	245	206				
414A-5	296	281	258**				
477A-5	-	-	-				
U _n = 690 V							
07A4-7	7.0	6.7	5.6				
09A9-7	9.4	8.9	7.0				
14A3-7	13.6	12.9	9.4				
019A-7	18	17	14				
023A-7	22	21	18				
027A-7	26	25	22				
035A-7	33	31	24				
042A-7	40	38	33				
049A-7	46	44	40				
061A-7	49	47	46				
084A-7	68	65	49				

ACS880-01	Output ratings when selection "Low noise optimization" in parameter 97.09 Switching freq mode is enabled						
	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use				
	I ₂	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}				
	Α	Α	A				
098A-7	83	79	68				
119A-7	101	96	83				
142A-7	101	96	84				
174A-7	122	116	101				
210A-7	138	131	122				
271A-7	178	169	138				

Definitions

- $U_{\rm p}$ Nominal voltage of the drive
- *I*₂ Nominal output current (available continuously with no over-loading)
- P_n Typical motor power in no-overload use
- $\it I_{\rm I,A}$ Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes
- $I_{\rm Hd}$ Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - * Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
 - ** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.
- P_{Hd} Typical motor power in heavy-duty use

The ratings apply at an ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

High speed mode

Selection "High speed mode" of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings improves control performance at high output frequencies. ABB recommends it to be selected with output frequency of 120 Hz and above.

This table gives the drive ratings for the maximum output frequency when "High speed mode" in parameter 95.15 Special HW settings is enabled. With smaller output frequencies, the current derating is less. Contact ABB for operation above the recommended maximum output frequency or for the output current derating with output frequencies above 120 Hz and below the maximum output frequency.

At the 120 Hz output frequency: no derating.

ACS880-01	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Specia HW settings							
	Maximum output frequency							
	f _{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use				
		I ₂	l _{Ld}	I _{Hd}				
	Hz	Α	Α	A				
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V								
04A6-2	500	4.1	3.9	3.3				
06A6-2	500	5.9	5.6	4.1				
07A5-2	500	6.7	6.4	5.9				
10A6-2	500	9.5	9.0	6.7				
16A8-2	500	15.0	14.3	9.5				
24A3-2	500	22.0	20.9	15.0				
031A-2	500	30.0	28.5	22.0				
046A-2	500	41.0	39.0	30.0				
061A-2	500	56	53	41				
075A-2	500	56	53	47				
087A-2	500	67	64	56				
115A-2	500	84	80	67				
145A-2	500	106	101	84				
170A-2	500	135	128	106				
206A-2	500	165	157	135				
274A-2	500	189	180	165				
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V		<u>'</u>						
02A4-3	500	2.2	2.1	1.7				
03A3-3	500	3.0	2.9	2.2				
04A0-3	500	3.6	3.4	3.0				
05A6-3	500	5.0	4.8	3.6				
07A2-3	500	6.5	6.2	5.0				
09A4-3	500	8.5	8.1	6.5				
12A6-3	500	11.3	10.7	8.5				

ACS880-01	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings							
	Maximum output frequency							
	f _{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use				
		l ₂	I _{Ld}	I _{Hd}				
	Hz	A	Α	A				
017A-3	500	15	14.3	11.3				
025A-3	500	22	20.9	15.0				
032A-3	500	30	29	22				
038A-3	500	35	33	30				
045A-3	500	41	39	35				
061A-3	500	56	53	41				
072A-3	500	56	53	47				
087A-3	500	67	64	56				
105A-3	500	77	73	67				
145A-3	500	106	101	77				
169A-3	500	135	128	106				
206A-3	500	165	157	135				
246A-3	500	170	162	143				
293A-3	500	202	192	170*				
363A-3	500	236	224	202				
430A-3	500	280	266	236**				
490A-3	-	-	-	-				
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V	'	<u>'</u>		'				
02A1-5	500	1.8	1.7	1.4				
03A0-5	500	2.6	2.5	1.8				
03A4-5	500	2.9	2.8	2.6				
04A8-5	500	4.1	3.9	2.9				
05A2-5	500	4.4	4.2	4.1				
07A6-5	500	6.5	6.2	4.4				
11A0-5	500	9.4	8.9	6.5				
014A-5	500	12.0	11.4	9.4				

ACS880-01	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings						
	Maximum output frequency						
	f _{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use			
		l ₂	I _{Ld}	/ _{Hd}			
	Hz	Α	A	A			
021A-5	500	18.0	17.1	12.0			
027A-5	500	23.0	21.9	18.0			
034A-5	500	29	28	23			
040A-5	500	29	28	23			
052A-5	500	37	35	29			
065A-5	500	39	37	33			
077A-5	500	46	44	39			
096A-5	500	58	55	46			
124A-5	500	74	70	58			
156A-5	500	122	116	74			
180A-5	500	140	133	122			
240A-5	500	168	160	140			
260A-5	500	182	173	168*			
302A-5	500	182	173	168			
361A-5	500	206	196	182			
414A-5	500	236	224	206**			
477A-5	-	-	-	-			
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V	<u>'</u>	_	1	<u>'</u>			
07A4-7	500	6.7	6.4	5.4			
09A9-7	500	8.9	8.5	6.7			
14A3-7	500	12.9	12.3	8.9			
019A-7	500	17	16	13			
023A-7	500	21	20	17			
027A-7	500	24	23	21			
035A-7	500	32	30	23			
042A-7	500	38	36	32			

ACS880-01	Output ratings with selection High speed mode of parameter 95.15 Special HW settings								
	Maximum output frequency								
	f _{max}	Nominal use	Light-duty use	Heavy-duty use					
		l ₂	I _{Ld}	/ _{Hd}					
	Hz	A	Α	Α					
049A-7	500	44	42	38					
061A-7	500	44	42	40					
084A-7	500	53	50	44					
098A-7	500	68	65	53					
119A-7	500	83	79	68					
142A-7	500	83	79	72					
174A-7	500	96	91	83					
210A-7	500	101	96	83					
271A-7	500	130	124	101					

Definitions

f Output frequency

fmax Maximum output frequency with High speed mode

U_n Nominal voltage of the drive

 l_2 Continuous rms output current. No overload capability at 40 °C (104 °F)

P. Typical motor power in no-overload use

 $I_{\rm l.d.}$ Continuous rms output current allowing 10% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes

 $I_{\rm Hd}$ Continuous rms output current allowing 50% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.

* Continuous rms output current allowing 30% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.

** Continuous rms output current allowing 25% overload for 1 minute every 5 minutes.

Fuses (IEC)

gG and aR fuses for protection against short-circuit in the input power cable or drive are listed below. Either fuse type can be used for frames R1 to R9 if it operates rapidly enough. The operating time depends on the supply network impedance and the cross-sectional area and length of the supply cable.

For frames R7 to R9 ABB recommends ultra-rapid (aR) fuses, refer to Quick guide for selecting between gG and aR fuses (page 239).

Note 1: See also section Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection.

Note 2: Fuses with higher current rating than the recommended ones must not be used. Fuses with lower current rating can be used.

Note 3: <u>For non-UL installations:</u> Fuses from other manufacturers can be used if they meet the ratings and the melting curve of the fuse does not exceed the melting curve of the fuse mentioned in the table.

aR fuses DIN 43653 stud-mount (frames R1 to R9)

ABB recommends stud-mount fuses for better cooling but blade style fuses can be used as well.

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)							
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input	ut Fuse				
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V							'
04A6-2	45	4.6	16	48	690	170M1309	000
06A6-2	45	6.6	16	48	690	170M1309	000
07A5-2	45	7.5	16	48	690	170M1309	000
10A6-2	45	10.6	16	48	690	170M1309	000
16A8-2	75	16.8	25	130	690	170M1311	000
24A3-2	140	24.3	40	460	690	170M1313	000
031A-2	250	31.0	63	1450	690	170M1315	000
046A-2	310	46	80	2550	690	170M1316	000
061A-2	590	61	125	8500	690	170M1318	000
075A-2	390	75	125	7500	690	170M3013	1
087A-2	580	87	160	8500	690	170M3014	1
115A-2	810	115	200	15000	690	170M3015	1
145A-2	1100	145	250	28500	690	170M3016	1
170A-2	1400	170	315	46500	690	170M3017	1
206A-2	1750	206	350	68500	690	170M3018	1
274A-2	2050	274	400	105000	690	170M3019	1
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V							
02A4-3	75	2.4	25	130	690	170M1311	000

	Ultrarapid	(aR) fuses	stud-m	ount (one	fuse pei	phase)			
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input	Fuse						
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653		
03A3-3	75	3.3	25	130	690	170M1311	000		
04A0-3	75	4.0	25	130	690	170M1311	000		
05A6-3	75	5.6	25	130	690	170M1311	000		
07A2-3	75	8.0	25	130	690	170M1311	000		
09A4-3	75	10.0	25	130	690	170M1311	000		
12A6-3	75	12.9	25	130	690	170M1311	000		
017A-3	140	17	40	460	690	170M1313	000		
025A-3	140	25	40	460	690	170M1313	000		
032A-3	250	32	63	1450	690	170M1315	000		
038A-3	250	38	63	1450	690	170M1315	000		
045A-3	310	45	80	2550	690	170M1316	000		
061A-3	450	61	100	4650	690	170M1317	000		
072A-3	590	72	125	8500	690	170M1318	000		
087A-3	800	87	160	16000	690	170M1319	000		
105A-3	810	105	200	15000	690	170M3015	1		
145A-3	1100	145	250	28500	690	170M3016	1		
169A-3	1400	169	315	46500	690	170M3017	1		
206A-3	1750	206	350	68500	690	170M3018	1		
246A-3	2100	246	450	105000	690	170M5009	2		
293A-3	2400	293	500	145000	690	170M5010	2		
363A-3	3400	363	630	275000	690	170M5012	2		
430A-3	4100	430	700	405000	690	170M5013	2		
490A-3	4100	450	700	405000	690	170M5013	2		
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V									
02A1-5	32	2.1	25	130	690	170M1308	000		
03A0-5	32	3.0	25	130	690	170M1308	000		
03A4-5	32	3.4	25	130	690	170M1308	000		
04A8-5	32	4.8	25	130	690	170M1308	000		

	Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)												
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input			Fu	se							
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653						
05A2-5	32	5.2	25	130	690	170M1308	000						
07A6-5	32	7.6	25	130	690	170M1308	000						
11A0-5	32	11.0	25	130	690	170M1308	000						
014A-5	140	14	40	460	690	170M1313	000						
021A-5	140	21	40	460	690	170M1313	000						
027A-5	250	27	63	1450	690	170M1315	000						
034A-5	250	34	63	1450	690	170M1315	000						
040A-5	310	40	80	2550	690	170M1316	000						
052A-5	450	52	100	4650	690	170M1317	000						
065A-5	590	65	125	8500	690	170M1318	000						
077A-5	800	77	160	16000	690	170M1319	000						
096A-5	810	96	200	15000	690	170M3015	1						
124A-5	1100	124	250	28500	690	170M3016	1						
156A-5	1400	156	315	46500	690	170M3017	1						
180A-5	1750	180	315	46500	690	170M3018	1						
240A-5	1800	240	400	74000	690	170M5008	2						
260A-5	2100	260	450	105000	690	170M5009	2						
302A-5	3000	302	550	190000	690	170M5011	2						
361A-5	3400	361	630	275000	690	170M5012	2						
414A-5	4100	414	700	405000	690	170M5013	2						
477A-5	4100	450	700	405000	690	170M5013	2						
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V													
07A4-7	45	7.4	16	48	690	170M1309	000						
09A9-7	59	9.9	20	78	690	170M1310	000						
14A3-7	105	14.3	32	270	690	170M1312	000						
019A-7	140	19	40	460	690	170M1313	000						
023A-7	180	23	50	770	690	170M1314	000						
027A-7	180	27	50	770	690	170M1314	000						

Ultrarapid (aR) fuses stud-mount (one fuse per phase)												
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input	Fuse									
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43653					
035A-7	250	35	63	1450	690	170M1315	000					
042A-7	310	42	80	2550	690	170M1316	000					
049A-7	310	49	80	2550	690	170M1316	000					
061A-7	590	61	125	8500	690	170M1318	000					
084A-7	800	84	160	16000	690	170M1319	000					
098A-7	810	98	200	15000	690	170M3015	1					
119A-7	810	119	200	15000	690	170M3015	1					
142A-7	1100	142	250	28500	690	170M3016	1					
174A-7	1400	174	315	46500	690	170M3017	1					
210A-7	1800	210	400	74000	690	170M5008	2					
271A-7	2100	271	450	105000	690	170M5009	2					

¹⁾ minimum short-circuit current of the installation

aR fuses DIN 43620 blade style (frames R1 to R9)

	Ultrarapid (aR) fuses blade style (one fuse per phase)												
ACS880-01	Milli. Siloi t-	Input		Fuse									
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43620						
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V													
04A6-2	42	4.6	16	48	690	170M1559	000						
06A6-2	42	6.6	16	48	690	170M1559	000						
07A5-2	42	7.5	16	48	690	170M1559	000						
10A6-2	60	10.6	20	78	690	170M1560	000						
16A8-2	75	16.8	25	130	690	170M1561	000						
24A3-2	140	24.3	40	460	690	170M1563	000						
031A-2	240	31.0	63	1450	690	170M1565	000						
046A-2	320	46	80	2550	690	170M1566	000						
061A-2	600	61	125	8500	690	170M1568	000						

	Ultrarapio	l (aR) fuse	s blade	style (one	fuse per	phase)			
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input	Fuse						
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43620		
075A-2	810	75	200	15000	690	170M3815	1		
087A-2	1100	87	250	28500	690	170M3816	1		
115A-2	1500	115	315	46500	690	170M3817	1		
145A-2	1500	145	315	46500	690	170M3817	1		
170A-2	2100	170	450	105000	690	170M5809	2		
206A-2	2500	206	500	155000	690	170M5810	2		
274A-2	2500	274	630	220000	690	170M5810	3		
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V						'	'		
02A4-3	75	2.4	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
03A3-3	75	3.3	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
04A0-3	75	4.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
05A6-3	75	5.6	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
07A2-3	75	8.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
09A4-3	75	10.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
12A6-3	75	12.9	25	130	690	170M1561	000		
017A-3	140	17	40	460	690	170M1563	000		
025A-3	140	25	40	460	690	170M1563	000		
032A-3	240	32	63	1450	690	170M1565	000		
038A-3	240	38	63	1450	690	170M1565	000		
045A-3	320	45	80	2550	690	170M1566	000		
061A-3	450	61	100	4650	690	170M1567	000		
072A-3	600	72	125	8500	690	170M1568	000		
087A-3	820	87	160	16000	690	170M1569	000		
105A-3	1500	105	315	46500	690	170M3817	1		
145A-3	1500	145	315	46500	690	170M3817	1		
169A-3	2100	169	450	105000	690	170M5809	2		
206A-3	2500	206	500	145000	690	170M5810	2		
246A-3	3400	246	630	275000	690	170M5812	2		

	Ultrarapio	l (aR) fuse	s blade	style (one	fuse per	phase)				
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input	Fuse							
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43620			
293A-3	4600	293	800	490000	690	170M6812D	3			
363A-3	6500	363	1000	985000	690	170M6814D	3			
430A-3	9800	430	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3			
490A-3	9800	450	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3			
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V										
02A1-5	75	2.1	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
03A0-5	75	3.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
03A4-5	75	3.4	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
04A8-5	75	4.8	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
05A2-5	75	5.2	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
07A6-5	75	7.6	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
11A0-5	75	11.0	25	130	690	170M1561	000			
014A-5	140	14	40	460	690	170M1563	000			
021A-5	140	21	40	460	690	170M1563	000			
027A-5	240	27	63	1450	690	170M1565	000			
034A-5	240	34	63	1450	690	170M1565	000			
040A-5	320	40	80	2550	690	170M1566	000			
052A-5	450	52	100	4650	690	170M1567	000			
065A-5	600	65	125	8500	690	170M1568	000			
077A-5	820	77	160	16000	690	170M1569	000			
096A-5	1100	96	250	28500	690	170M3816	1			
124A-5	1500	124	315	46500	690	170M3817	1			
156A-5	1700	156	400	74000	690	170M5808	2			
180A-5	2500	180	500	155000	690	170M5810	2			
240A-5	2950	240	550	190000	690	170M5811	2			
260A-5	4600	260	800	490000	690	170M6812D	3			
302A-5	6500	302	1000	985000	690	170M6814D	3			
361A-5	6500	361	1000	985000	690	170M6814D	3			

	Ultrarapid	l (aR) fuse	s blade	style (one	fuse per	phase)			
ACS880-01	Min. short-	Input	Fuse						
	circuit cur- rent ¹⁾ (A)	current (A)	A	A ² s	V	Bussmann type	Type DIN 43620		
414A-5	9800	414	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3		
477A-5	9800	450	1250	2150000	690	170M8554D	3		
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V						'			
07A4-7	42	7.4	16	48	690	170M1559	000		
09A9-7	60	9.9	20	78	690	170M1560	000		
14A3-7	110	14.3	32	270	690	170M1562	000		
019A-7	140	19	40	460	690	170M1563	000		
023A-7	190	23	50	770	690	170M1564	000		
027A-7	190	27	50	770	690	170M1564	000		
035A-7	240	35	63	1450	690	170M1565	000		
042A-7	320	42	80	2550	690	170M1566	000		
049A-7	320	49	80	2550	690	170M1566	000		
061A-7	600	61	125	8500	690	170M1568	000		
084A-7	820	84	160	16000	690	170M1569	000		
098A-7	1100	98	400	74000	690	170M3816	2		
119A-7	1100	119	400	74000	690	170M3816	2		
142A-7	2500	142	500	145000	690	170M5810	2		
174A-7	2500	174	500	145000	690	170M5810	2		
210A-7	3400	210	700	320000	690	170M6811D	3		
271A-7	3400	271	700	320000	690	170M6811D	3		

¹⁾ minimum short-circuit current of the installation

gG fuses DIN 43620 blade style (frames R1 to R9)

Check on the fuse time-current curve to ensure the operating time of the fuse is below 0.5 seconds. Obey the local regulations.

		gG fuse	s (one f	use per ph	ase)		
ACS880-01	Min. short- circuit cur- rent 1)	Input current			F	use	
	Α	Α	Α	A ² s	V	ABB type	DIN size
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V							
04A6-2	40	4.6	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
06A6-2	80	6.6	10	360	500	OFAF000H10	000
07A5-2	120	7.5	16	740	500	OFAF000H16	000
10A6-2	120	10.6	16	740	500	OFAF000H16	000
16A8-2	200	16.8	25	2500	500	OFAF000H25	000
24A3-2	350	24.3	40	7700	500	OFAF000H40	000
031A-2	400	31.0	50	16000	500	OFAF000H50	000
046A-2	500	46	63	20100	500	OFAF000H63	000
061A-2	800	61	80	37500	500	OFAF000H80	000
075A-2	1000	75	100	65000	500	OFAF000H100	000
087A-2	1300	87	125	100000	500	OFAF00H125	00
115A-2	1700	115	160	170000	500	OFAF00H160	00
145A-2	2300	145	200	300000	500	OFAF0H200	0
170A-2	3300	170	250	600000	500	OFAF0H250	0
206A-2	5500	206	315	710000	500	OFAF1H315	1
274A-2	7000	274	400	1100000	500	OFAF2H400	2
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V							
02A4-3	17	2.4	4	53	500	OFAF000H4	000
03A3-3	40	3.3	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
04A0-3	40	4.0	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000
05A6-3	80	5.6	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000
07A2-3	80	8.0	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000
09A4-3	120	10.0	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000
12A6-3	120	12.9	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000

	gG fuses (one fuse per phase)												
ACS880-01	Min. short- circuit cur- rent 1)	Input current			F	use							
	Α	A	Α	A ² s	٧	ABB type	DIN size						
017A-3	200	17	25	2500	500	OFAF000H25	000						
025A-3	250	25	32	4500	500	OFAF000H32	000						
032A-3	350	32	40	7700	500	OFAF000H40	000						
038A-3	400	38	50	15400	500	OFAF000H50	000						
045A-3	500	45	63	21300	500	OFAF000H63	000						
061A-3	800	61	80	37000	500	OFAF000H80	000						
072A-3	1000	72	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000						
087A-3	1000	87	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000						
105A-3	1300	105	125	103000	500	OFAF00H125	00						
145A-3	1700	145	160	185000	500	OFAF00H160	00						
169A-3	3300	169	250	600000	500	OFAF0H250	0						
206A-3	5500	206	315	710000	500	OFAF1H315	1						
246A-3	6400	246	355	920000	500	OFAF1H355	1						
293A-3	7800	293	425	1300000	500	OFAF2H425	2						
363A-3	9400	363	500	2000000	500	OFAF2H500	2						
430A-3	10200	430	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3						
490A-3	10200	450	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3						
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V													
02A1-5	17	2.1	4	53	500	OFAF000H4	000						
03A0-5	40	3.0	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000						
03A4-5	40	3.4	6	110	500	OFAF000H6	000						
04A8-5	80	4.8	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000						
05A2-5	80	5.2	10	355	500	OFAF000H10	000						
07A6-5	120	7.6	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000						
11A0-5	120	11.0	16	700	500	OFAF000H16	000						
014A-5	200	14	25	2500	500	OFAF000H25	000						
021A-5	250	21	32	4500	500	OFAF000H32	000						
027A-5	350	27	40	7700	500	OFAF000H40	000						

		gG fuses	s (one 1	use per ph	ase)		
ACS880-01	Min. short- circuit cur- rent 1)	Input current			F	use	
	Α	A	A	A ² s	V	ABB type	DIN size
034A-5	400	34	50	15400	500	OFAF000H50	000
040A-5	500	40	63	21300	500	OFAF000H63	000
052A-5	800	52	80	37000	500	OFAF000H80	000
065A-5	1000	65	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000
077A-5	1000	77	100	63600	500	OFAF000H100	000
096A-5	1300	96	125	103000	500	OFAF00H125	00
124A-5	1700	124	160	185000	500	OFAF00H160	00
156A-5	3300	156	250	600000	500	OFAF0H250	0
180A-5	5500	180	315	710000	500	OFAF1H315	1
240A-5	6400	240	355	920000	500	OFAF1H355	1
260A-5	7000	260	400	1100000	500	OFAF2H400	2
302A-5	9400	302	500	2000000	500	OFAF2H500	2
361A-5	10200	361	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
414A-5	10200	414	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
477A-5	10200	450	630	2800000	500	OFAF3H630	3
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V	'						
07A4-7	115	7.4	16	1200	690	OFAA000GG16	000
09A9-7	145	9.9	20	2400	690	OFAA000GG20	000
14A3-7	190	14.3	25	4000	690	OFAA000GG25	000
019A-7	280	19	35	12000	690	OFAA000GG35	000
023A-7	450	23	50	24000	690	OFAA000GG50	000
027A-7	450	27	50	24000	690	OFAA000GG50	000
035A-7	520	35	63	30000	690	OFAA000GG63	000
042A-7	800	42	80	51000	690	OFAA0GG80	0
049A-7	800	49	80	51000	690	OFAA0GG80	0
061A-7	1050	61	100	95000	690	OFAA0GG100	0
084A-7	1700	84	160	240000	690	OFAA1GG160	1
098A-7	1700	98	160	240000	690	OFAA1GG160	1

	gG fuses (one fuse per phase)												
ACS880-01	Min. short- circuit cur- rent ¹⁾	Input current			F	use							
A A A A ² s V ABB type DIN s													
119A-7	2200	119	200	350000	690	OFAA1GG200	1						
142A-7	3200	142	250	700000	690	OFAA1GG250	1						
174A-7	5500	174	315	850000	690	OFAA2GG315	2						
210A-7	7000	210	400 1300000 690 OFAA3GG400 3										
271A-7	7000	271	400	1300000	690	OFAA3GG400	3						

¹⁾ minimum short-circuit current of the installation

Quick guide for selecting between gG and aR fuses

The combinations (cable size, cable length, transformer size and fuse type) in this table fulfill the minimum requirements for the proper operation of the fuse. Use this table to select between gG and aR fuses or to calculate the short-circuit current of the installation as described in Calculating the short-circuit current of the installation (page 242).

ACS880-	Cable	e type	Supply transformer minimum apparent power $S_{\rm N}$ (kVA)									
01	Copper	Alumin- um	Maximur	n cable ler gG fuses	gth with		Maximum cable length wit aR fuses					
	mm ²	mm²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m				
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V			!				,					
04A6-2	3×1.5	-	1.1	1.1	-	1.1	1.2	-				
06A6-2	3×1.5	-	2.2	2.4	-	1.1	1.2	-				
07A5-2	3×1.5	-	3.3	4.3	-	1.1	1.2	-				
10A6-2	3×1.5	-	3.3	4.3	-	1.5	1.8	-				
16A8-2	3×6	-	5.5	5.8	-	1.8	1.8	-				
24A3-2	3×6	-	9.7	11	-	3.3	3.5	-				
031A-2	3×10	-	11	12	-	4.4	4.6	-				
046A-2	3×16	3×35	14	15	-	7.7	8.2	-				
061A-2	3×25	3×35	22	24	-	8.3	8.6	-				
075A-2	3×35	3×50	28	29	-	11	11	-				
087A-2	3×35	3×70	36	39	-	14	15	-				
115A-2	3×50	3×70	48	52	-	19	21	-				
145A-2	3×95	3×120	64	70	-	28	30	-				
170A-2	3×120	3×150	93	104	-	36	39	-				
206A-2	3×150	3×240	158	194	-	40	45	-				
274A-2	2×(3×95)	2×(3×120)	198	229	-	57	62	-				
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V				ı			'	'				
02A4-3	3×1.5	-	0.82	0.82	0.82	3.1	3.4	5.0				
03A3-3	3×1.5	-	1.9	1.9	2.0	3.1	3.4	5.0				
04A0-3	3×1.5	-	1.9	1.9	2.0	3.1	3.4	5.0				
05A6-3	3×1.5	-	3.8	4.0	4.4	3.1	3.4	5.0				
07A2-3	3×1.5	-	3.8	4.0	4.4	3.1	3.4	5.0				

ACS880-	Cable	e type	Supply transformer minimum apparent power $S_{\rm N}$ (kVA)							
01	Copper	Alumin- um	Maximur	n cable ler gG fuses	gth with	Maximun	Maximum cable length with aR fuses			
	mm ²	mm ²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m		
09A4-3	3×1.5	-	5.8	6.2	8.4	3.1	3.4	5.0		
12A6-3	3×1.5	-	5.8	6.2	8.4	3.1	3.4	5.0		
017A-3	3×6	-	9.6	9.8	10	5.8	5.9	6.2		
025A-3	3×6	-	12	12	13	5.8	5.9	6.2		
032A-3	3×10	-	17	17	18	8.2	8.3	8.7		
038A-3	3×10	-	19	20	21	8.2	8.3	8.7		
045A-3	3×16	3×25	24	24	26	13	14	15		
061A-3	3×25	3×25	39	39	42	18	19	20		
072A-3	3×35	3×35	48	49	52	23	24	25		
087A-3	3×35	3×50	48	49	52	34	35	38		
105A-3	3×50	3×70	63	65	68	62	67	80		
145A-3	3×95	3×95	82	85	88	62	65	70		
169A-3	3×120	3×150	160	170	187	87	93	104		
206A-3	3×150	3×185	269	298	357	107	116	132		
246A-3	2×(3×70)	2×(3×95)	311	335	393	145	157	180		
293A-3	2×(3×95)	2×(3×120)	380	411	478	193	211	248		
363A-3	2×(3×120)	2×(3×185)	459	502	591	269	304	378		
430A-3	2×(3×150)	2×(3×240)	499	547	641	380	452	634		
490A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V			1	1		1				
02A1-5	3×1.5	-	1.0	1.0	1.0	3.9	4.1	5.0		
03A0-5	3×1.5	-	2.4	2.4	2.4	3.9	4.1	5.0		
03A4-5	3×1.5	-	2.4	2.4	2.4	3.9	4.1	5.0		
04A8-5	3×1.5	-	4.8	4.9	5.2	3.9	4.1	5.0		
05A2-5	3×1.5	-	4.8	4.9	5.2	3.9	4.1	5.0		
07A6-5	3×1.5	-	7.2	7.5	8.9	3.9	4.1	5.0		
11A0-5	3×1.5	-	7.2	7.5	8.9	3.9	4.1	5.0		
014A-5	3×6	-	12	12	12	7.2	7.3	7.6		
021A-5	3×6	-	15	15	16	7.2	7.3	7.6		

ACS880-	Cabl	e type	Supply transformer minimum apparent power S_N (kVA)							
01	Copper	Alumin- um	Maximur	n cable ler gG fuses	ngth with	Maximun	n cable ler aR fuses	gth with		
	mm ²	mm ²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m		
027A-5	3×10	-	21	21	22	10	10	11		
034A-5	3×10	-	24	24	25	10	10	11		
040A-5	3×16	3×35	30	30	31	17	17	18		
052A-5	3×25	3×35	48	49	51	18	18	19		
065A-5	3×35	3×50	60	61	63	29	29	30		
077A-5	3×35	3×70	60	61	63	42	43	46		
096A-5	3×50	3×70	78	80	83	60	63	67		
124A-5	3×95	3×120	103	105	108	77	80	85		
156A-5	3×120	3×150	200	209	224	97	102	109		
180A-5	3×150	3×240	335	362	411	133	143	156		
240A-5	2×(3×70)	2×(3×95)	388	410	456	158	165	179		
260A-5	2×(3×70)	2×(3×95)	425	452	512	242	262	307		
302A-5	2x(3x95)	2×(3×120)	572	617	711	336	372	450		
361A-5	2×(3×120)	2×(3×185)	621	669	763	336	368	427		
414A-5	2×(3×150)	2×(3×240)	621	666	747	473	539	674		
477A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V		1	1	ı		1		I		
07A4-7	3×1.5	-	9.5	9.5	9.5	3.3	3.3	3.3		
09A9-7	3×1.5	-	12	12	12	4.4	4.4	4.4		
14A3-7	3×2.5	-	16	16	16	7.8	7.8	7.8		
019A-7	3×4	-	23	23	23	9.9	10	10		
023A-7	3×6	-	37	37	38	13	13	13		
027A-7	3×10	-	37	37	38	13	13	13		
035A-7	3×10	3×25	43	43	44	14	14	14		
042A-7	3×16	3×25	66	67	68	23	23	24		
049A-7	3×16	3×25	66	67	68	23	23	24		
061A-7	3×25	3×35	87	88	90	40	40	41		
084A-7	3×35	3×50	141	144	149	58	59	61		
098A-7	3×50	3×70	141	143	146	134	138	145		

ACS880-	Cabl	e type	Supply t	Supply transformer minimum apparent power $S_{\rm N}$ (kVA)							
01	Copper	Alumin- um	Maximur	n cable ler gG fuses	ngth with	Maximum cable length with aR fuses					
	mm ²	mm ²	10 m	50 m	100 m	10 m	100 m	200 m			
119A-7	3×70	3×95	183	187	192	134	138	145			
142A-7	3×95	3×120	267	275	286	184	192	205			
174A-7	3×120	3×185	452	476	515	184	192	205			
210A-7	3×185	2×(3×95)	584	608	654	266	277	295			
271A-7	3×240	2×(3×120)	584	605	640	266	275	289			

Calculating the short-circuit current of the installation

Make sure that the short-circuit current of the installation is at least the value given in the fuse table.

The short-circuit current of the installation can be calculated as follows:

$$I_{k2-ph} = \frac{U}{2 \cdot \sqrt{R_c^2 + (Z_k + X_c)^2}}$$

where

 $I_{\mathrm{k2-ph}}$ Short-circuit current in symmetrical two-phase short-circuit

U Network line-to-line voltage (V)

R_c Cable resistance (ohm)

 $Z_k = Z_k \cdot U_n^2 / S_n = \text{transformer impedance (ohm)}$

 $z_{\rm k}$ Transformer impedance (%)

 $U_{\rm n}$ Transformer rated voltage (V)

 $S_{\rm n}$ Nominal apparent power of the transformer (kVA)

 $X_{\rm c}$ Cable reactance (ohm)

Calculation example

Drive:

- ACS880-01-145A-3
- Supply voltage = 410 V

Transformer:

rated power S_n = 600 kVA

- rated voltage (drive supply voltage) $U_N = 430 \text{ V}$
- transformer impedance $z_k = 7.2\%$.

Supply cable:

- length = 170 m
- resistance/length = 0.398 ohm/km
- reactance/length = 0.082 ohm/km.

$$Z_{k} = z_{k} \cdot \frac{U_{N}^{2}}{S_{N}} = 0.072 \cdot \frac{(430 \text{ V})^{2}}{600 \text{ kVA}} = 22.19 \text{ mohm}$$

$$R_{c} = 170 \text{ m} \cdot 0.398 \frac{\text{ohm}}{\text{km}} = 67.66 \text{ mohm}$$

$$X_{c} = 170 \text{ m} \cdot 0.082 \frac{\text{ohm}}{\text{km}} = 13.94 \text{ mohm}$$

$$I_{k2-ph} = \frac{410 \text{ V}}{2 \cdot \sqrt{(67.66 \text{ mohm})^{2} + (22.19 \text{ mohm} + 13.94 \text{ mohm})^{2}}} = 2.7 \text{ kA}$$

The calculated short-circuit current 2.7 kA is higher than the minimum short-circuit current of the drive gG fuse type OFAF00H160 (1700 A). -> The 500 V gG fuse (ABB Control OFAF00H160) can be used.

Fuses (UL)

The UL Listed fuses in this manual are required for branch circuit protection and required per NEC. The drives are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 kA symmetrical amperes (rms) at 240 V, 480 V, and 600 V maximum when protected by the fuses given below.

ABB recommends Class T fuses listed below. Also allowed are UL Listed 248-8 Class J fast acting, time delay, and high speed fuses, 248-4 Class CC fast acting fuses and 248-17 Class CF fast acting and time delay fuses of the same nominal voltage and current rating.

Refer to notes below the table.

For the 440 V fuses, refer to the ACS880-01..., ACS880-04..., ACS880-11..., ACS880-31..., ACS880-14... and ACS880-34... +C132 marine type-approved drives supplement (3AXD50000010521 [English]).

ACS880-01	Input current		UL (one fuse	e per phase)	
	A	Α	V	Bussmann type	UL class
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V					
04A6-2	4.4	15	600	JJS-15	Т
06A6-2	6.3	15	600	JJS-15	Т
07A5-2	7.1	15	600	JJS-15	Т
10A6-2	10.1	20	600	JJS-20	Т
16A8-2	16.0	25	600	JJS-25	Т
24A3-2	23.1	35	600	JJS-35	Т
031A-2	29.3	50	600	JJS-50	Т
046A-2	44	80	600	JJS-80	Т
061A-2	58	80	600	JJS-80	Т
075A-2	71	110	600	JJS-110	Т
087A-2	83	110	600	JJS-110	Т
115A-2	109	150	600	JJS-150	Т
145A-2	138	200	600	JJS-200	Т
170A-2	162	250	600	JJS-250	Т
206A-2	196	300	600	JJS-300	Т
274A-2	260	400	600	JJS-400	Т

ACS880-01	Input current		UL (one fus	e per phase)	
	A	Α	V	Bussmann type	UL class
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V				•	
02A4-3	2.4	15	600	JJS-15	Т
03A3-3	3.3	15	600	JJS-15	Т
04A0-3	4.0	15	600	JJS-15	Т
05A6-3	5.6	15	600	JJS-15	Т
07A2-3	8.0	15	600	JJS-15	Т
09A4-3	10.0	15	600	JJS-15	Т
12A6-3	12.9	20	600	JJS-20	Т
017A-3	17	25	600	JJS-25	Т
025A-3	25	35	600	JJS-35	Т
032A-3	32	40	600	JJS-40	Т
038A-3	38	50	600	JJS-50	Т
045A-3	45	60	600	JJS-60	Т
061A-3	61	80	600	JJS-80	Т
072A-3	72	90	600	JJS-90	Т
087A-3	87	110	600	JJS-110	Т
105A-3	105	150	600	JJS-150	Т
145A-3	145	200	600	JJS-200	Т
169A-3	169	225	600	JJS-225	Т
206A-3	206	300	600	JJS-300	Т
246A-3	246	350	600	JJS-350	Т
293A-3	293	400	600	JJS-400	Т
363A-3	363	500	600	JJS-500	Т
430A-3	430	600	600	JJS-600	Т
490A-3	450	600	600	JJS-600	Т
<i>U</i> _n = 480 V					
02A1-5	2.1	15	600	JJS-15	Т
03A0-5	3.0	15	600	JJS-15	Т
03A4-5	3.4	15	600	JJS-15	Т
04A8-5	4.8	15	600	JJS-15	Т

ACS880-01	Input current		UL (one fuse	e per phase)	
	A	Α	V	Bussmann type	UL class
05A2-5	5.2	15	600	JJS-15	Т
07A6-5	7.6	15	600	JJS-15	Т
11A0-5	11	20	600	JJS-20	Т
014A-5	14	25	600	JJS-25	Т
021A-5	21	35	600	JJS-35	Т
027A-5	27	40	600	JJS-40	Т
034A-5	34	50	600	JJS-50	Т
040A-5	40	60	600	JJS-60	Т
052A-5	52	80	600	JJS-80	Т
065A-5	65	90	600	JJS-90	Т
077A-5	77	110	600	JJS-110	Т
096A-5	96	150	600	JJS-150	Т
124A-5	124	200	600	JJS-200	Т
156A-5	156	225	600	JJS-225	Т
180A-5	180	300	600	JJS-300	Т
240A-5	240	350	600	JJS-350	Т
260A-5	260	400	600	JJS-400	Т
302A-5	302	400	600	JJS-400	Т
361A-5	361	500	600	JJS-500	Т
414A-5	414	600	600	JJS-600	Т
477A-5	450	600	600	JJS-600	Т
U _n = 575 V					
07A4-7	7.0	15	600	JJS-15	Т
09A9-7	9.4	20	600	JJS-20	Т
14A3-7	13.6	30	600	JJS-30	Т
019A-7	18	40	600	JJS-40	Т
023A-7	22	50	600	JJS-50	Т
027A-7	27	50	600	JJS-50	Т
035A-7	41	60	600	JJS-60	Т
042A-7	52	80	600	JJS-80	Т

ACS880-01	Input current	UL (one fuse per phase)						
	A	Α	V	Bussmann type	UL class			
049A-7	52	80	600	JJS-80	Т			
061A-7	62	110	600	JJS-110	Т			
084A-7	77	150	600	JJS-150	Т			
098A-7	99	150	600	JJS-150	Т			
119A-7	125	200	600	JJS-200	Т			
142A-7	144	250	600	JJS-250	Т			
174A-7	180	300	600	JJS-300	Т			
210A-7	242	400	600	JJS-400	Т			
271A-7	271	400	600	JJS-400	Т			

Semiconductor fuses for frame R9 with base part numbers are listed below. Semiconductor fuses with optional indicators can be used and have no impact on the drive UL listing, performance, or rating of the fuse. For 100 kA SCCR panel rating the semiconductor fuses must be in the same enclosure as the drive.

ACS880- 01	Input cur- rent		ize (A) and ge (V)	Bussmann semiconductor fuses UL 248-13 Recognized Fuses					
	A	Maximum current (A)	Voltage rating (V)	Type Flush End	Type DIN 43463	Type US Style	Type French Style		
<i>U</i> _n = 480 V	,								
302A-5	302	550	690	170M6409	170M6009	170M6609	170M6309		
361A-5	361	630	690	170M6410	170M6010	170M6610	170M6310		
414A-5	414	700	690	170M6411	170M6011	170M6611	170M6311		
U _n = 575 V						,			
210A-7	242	500	690	170M6408	170M6008	170M6608	170M6308		
271A-7	271	500	690	170M6408	170M6008	170M6608	170M6308		

- 1. Fuses are required as part of the installation, are not included in the base drive configuration and must be provided by others.
- 2. Fuses with a higher current rating than specified must not be used.

- 3. The UL listed fuses recommended by ABB are the required branch circuit protection per NEC. Circuit breakers listed in section Circuit breakers (UL) are also acceptable as branch circuit protection.
- 4. The recommended size or smaller UL listed 248 fast acting, time delay, or high speed fuses must be used to maintain the UL listing of the drive. Additional protection can be used. Refer to local codes and regulations.
- 5. A fuse of a different class can be used at the high fault rating where the I_{peak} and $\hat{F}t$ of the new fuse is not greater than that of the specified fuse.
- UL listed 248 fast acting, time delay, or high speed fuses from other
 manufacturers can be used if they meet the same class and rating requirements
 specified in the rules above.
- 7. When you install a drive, always obey ABB installation instructions, NEC requirements and local codes.
- 8. Only 480 V R9 drives with serial numbers beginning 1204205581 when built in Finland and beginning 22106xxxxx when built in the U.S. may be protected with fuses other than Class T fuses.
- Alternative fuses can be used if they meet certain characteristics. For permitted fuses, see Branch Circuit Protection for ABB drives manual supplement (3AXD50000645015).

In multicable installations, install only one fuse per phase (not one fuse per conductor). See also section Implementing short-circuit and thermal overload protection (page 89)

Circuit breakers (IEC)

Note: This section does not apply to the North American market. Refer to section Circuit breakers (UL).

Obey the rules that are listed below the tables.

The protective characteristics of the circuit breakers depend on the type, construction and settings of the breakers. There are also limitations pertaining to the short-circuit capacity of the supply network. Your local ABB representative can help you in selecting the breaker type when the supply network characteristics are known.



AWARNING Pay special attention to the installation and placement of the breakers. Obey the manufacturer's instructions. Hot ionized gases can escape from the breaker enclosure in a short-circuit.

You can use the circuit breakers specified by ABB. You can also use other circuit breakers with the drive if they provide the same electrical characteristics. ABB does not assume any liability whatsoever for the correct function and protection

of the circuit breakers not specified by ABB. Furthermore, if the specifications given by ABB are not obeyed, the drive can experience problems the warranty does not cover.

ABB miniature and molded case circuit breakers

ACS880- 01	Frame	ABB miniatur cuit break		ABB moulded case circuit breaker (Tmax)			
		Туре	kA ¹⁾	Type ²⁾	kA ¹⁾	Enclosure minimum volume (m³)	Drive volume (m³)
U _n = 230 V	,						
04A6-2	R1	S 303 P-B 10	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
06A6-2	R1	S 303 P-B 10	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
07A5-2	R1	S 303 P-B 16	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
10A6-2	R1	S 303 P-B 16	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.046	0.014
16A8-2	R2	S 303 P-B 20	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.051	0.015
24A3-2	R2	S 303 P-B 32	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.051	0.015
031A-2	R3	S 303 P-B 50	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.069	0.020
046A-2	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.108	0.032
061A-2	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.108	0.032
075A-2	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.137	0.041
087A-2	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.137	0.041
115A-2	R6	-	-	XT2 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.220	0.065
145A-2	R6	-	-	XT4 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.220	0.065
170A-2	R7	-	-	XT4 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.308	0.091
206A-2	R7	-	-	XT4 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.308	0.091
274A-2	R8	-	-	XT5 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.377	0.112
U _n = 400 V	,					,	'
02A4-3	R1	S 303 P-B 6	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
03A3-3	R1	S 303 P-B 6	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
04A0-3	R1	S 303 P-B 6	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
05A6-3	R1	S 303 P-B 10	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
07A2-3	R1	S 303 P-B 13	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
09A4-3	R1	S 303 P-B 13	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.133	0.014
12A6-3	R1	S 303 P-B 20	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.133	0.014
017A-3	R2	S 303 P-B 25	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.015
025A-3	R2	S 303 P-B 32	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.015

ACS880- 01	Frame	ABB miniatur cuit break		ABB moulded case circuit	t break	er (Tmax)	
		Туре	kA ¹⁾	Type ²⁾	kA ¹⁾	Enclosure minimum volume (m³)	Drive volume (m³)
032A-3	R3	S 303 P-B 50	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.454	0.020
038A-3	R3	S 303 P-B 63	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.454	0.020
045A-3	R4	S 803 P-B 63	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.032
061A-3	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.032
072A-3	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.041
087A-3	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2H 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.041
105A-3	R6	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.265	0.065
145A-3	R6	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.265	0.065
169A-3	R7	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091
206A-3	R7	-	-	XT4H 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091
246A-3	R8	-	-	XT5H 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.531	0.112
293A-3	R8	-	-	XT5H 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.112
363A-3	R9	-	-	XT5H 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150
430A-3	R9	-	-	XT5H 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150
490A-3	R9	-	-	-	-	-	-
U _n = 500 V	,						
02A1-5	R1	S 803 S-B 6	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
03A0-5	R1	S 803 S-B 6	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
03A4-5	R1	S 803 S-B 6	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
04A8-5	R1	S 803 S-B 10	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
05A2-5	R1	S 803 S-B 13	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
07A6-5	R1	S 803 S-B 13	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
11A0-5	R1	S 803 S-B 20	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	65	0.133	0.014
014A-5	R2	S 803 S-B 25	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.454	0.015
021A-5	R2	S 803 S-B 32	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	65	0.454	0.015
027A-5	R3	S 803 S-B 50	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.020
034A-5	R3	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	65	0.454	0.020
040A-5	R4	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.032
052A-5	R4	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.032
065A-5	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	65	0.496	0.041
077A-5	R5	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.496	0.041

ACS880- 01	Frame	ABB miniatu cuit break		ABB moulded case circuit	break	er (Tmax)	「max)	
		Туре	kA ¹⁾	Type ²⁾	kA ¹⁾	Enclosure minimum volume (m³)	Drive volume (m³)	
096A-5	R6	-	-	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.265	0.065	
124A-5	R6	-	- 1	XT2 V 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	65	0.265	0.065	
156A-5	R7	-	-	XT4 V 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091	
180A-5	R7	-	-	XT4 V 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	65	0.310	0.091	
240A-5	R8	-	- 1	XT5 L 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	65	0.531	0.112	
260A-5	R8	-	-	XT5 L 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A		0.531	0.112	
302A-5	R9	-	-	XT5 L 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A		0.531	0.150	
361A-5	R9	-	-	XT5 L 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150	
414A-5	R9	-	-	XT5 L 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	65	0.531	0.150	
477A-5	R9	-	-	-	-	-	-	
U _n = 690 V	,					ı		
07A4-7	R3	S 803 S-B 13	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	18	0.454	0.020	
09A9-7	R3	S 803 S-B 20	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 10	18	0.454	0.020	
14A3-7	R3	S 803 S-B 25	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	18	0.454	0.020	
019A-7	R3	S 803 S-B 32	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 25	18	0.454	0.020	
023A-7	R3	S 803 S-B 50	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	18	0.454	0.020	
027A-7	R3	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	18	0.454	0.020	
035A-7	R5	S 803 S-B 63	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 63	18	0.496	0.041	
042A-7	R5	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	18	0.496	0.041	
049A-7	R5	S 803 P-B 80	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 100	18	0.496	0.041	
061A-7	R6	S 803 S-B 125	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	18	0.265	0.065	
084A-7	R6	S 803 P-B 125	10	XT2 L 160 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 160	18	0.265	0.065	
098A-7	R7	-	-	XT4 L 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	20	0.310	0.091	
119A-7	R7	-	-	XT4 L 250 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 250	20	0.310	0.091	
142A-7	R8	-	-	XT5 S 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 320A	20	0.531	0.112	
174A-7	R8	-	-	XT5 S 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 320A	20	0.531	0.112	
210A-7	R9	-	-	XT5 S 400 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 400A	35	0.531	0.150	
271A-7	R9	-	-	XT5 S 630 EKIP DIP LS/I IN 630A	35	0.531	0.150	

Maximum allowed rated conditional short-circuit current (IEC 61800-5-1) of the electrical power network
 The following trip units are also permitted: EKIP DIP (LSI, LSIG, LIG), EKIP Touch (LSI, LSIG), and EKIP Hi-Touch (LSI, LSIG)

- 1. Drives that have an enclosure minimum volume listed must be mounted in an enclosure ≥ enclosure minimum volume specified in the tables above.
- 2. When multiple drives that have an enclosure minimum volume specified are installed in the same enclosure, minimum volume of the enclosure is determined by the largest enclosure minimum volume of the drives to be placed in the enclosure, plus the volume(s) of each additional drive. For example, for the 400 V R6 and R3 drive, select enclosure with the volume ≥ 0.454+0.065 = 0.519 m³.
- 3. If you are only mounting drives with no enclosure minimum volume specified, you have no restrictions on the enclosure size, but you must follow air clearances specified in the drive hardware manuals for sufficient ventilation around each drive.
- 4. Ratings in the tables are maximum for the given circuit breaker frame size. Breakers of the same frame size and interrupting rating with lower current ratings are also allowed.
- The braking capacity can be equal to or more than the value in the table. If the braking capacity is less than the value in the table, make sure that the breaker has a KAIC rating that is high enough to withstand the available short-circuit current.
- 6. **For 400 V and 500 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R1 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.
- 7. **For 400 V and 500 V drives:** Enclosures for frame R6 must have a solid top directly above the drive. Fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly above the drive.
- 8. **For 690 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R3, R5 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.

ABB manual motor starters

ACS880-	Frame	ABB manual motor starters								
01		Туре	Limitor	kA ¹⁾	Enclosure minimum volume (m³)	Drive volume (m³)				
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V										
04A6-2	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	-	0.014				
06A6-2	R1	MS132-10	-	30	-	0.014				

ACS880-	Frame		ABB manual m	otor sta	rters	
01		Type	Limitor	kA ¹⁾	Enclosure minimum volume (m³)	Drive volume (m³)
07A5-2	R1	MS132-10	-	30	-	0.014
10A6-2	R1	MS132-16	-	30	-	0.014
16A8-2	R2	MS132-25	-	30	-	0.015
24A3-2	R2	MS132-25	-	30	-	0.015
031A-2	R3	MS132-25	-	30	-	0.020
046A-2	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	-	0.032
061A-2	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	-	0.032
075A-2	R5	MS165-80	-	30	-	0.041
087A-2	R5	MS165-80	-	30	-	0.041
<i>U</i> _n = 400 \	/					
02A4-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
03A3-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
04A0-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
05A6-3	R1	MS132-6.3	-	30	0.046	0.014
07A2-3	R1	MS132-10	-	30	0.046	0.014
09A4-3	R1	MS132-10	-	30	0.046	0.014
12A6-3	R1	MS132-16	-	30	0.046	0.014
017A-3	R2	MS132-25	-	30	0.051	0.015
025A-3	R2	MS132-25	-	30	0.051	0.015
032A-3	R3	MS132-25	-	30	0.069	0.020
038A-3	R3	MS165-65	-	30	0.069	0.020
045A-3	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	0.108	0.032
061A-3	R4	MS165-65	S803S-SCL32-SR	30	0.108	0.032
072A-3	R5	MS165-80	-	30	0.137	0.041
087A-3	R5	MS165-80	-	30	0.137	0.041

¹⁾ Maximum allowed rated conditional short-circuit current (IEC 61800-5-1) of the electrical power network

^{1.} Drives that have an enclosure minimum volume listed must be mounted in an enclosure ≥ enclosure minimum volume specified in the tables above.

- 2. When multiple drives that have an enclosure minimum volume specified are installed in the same enclosure, minimum volume of the enclosure is determined by the largest enclosure minimum volume of the drives to be placed in the enclosure, plus the volume(s) of each additional drive. For example, for the 400 V R5 and R3 drive, select enclosure with the volume ≥0.137+0.020 = 0.157 m³.
- 3. If you are only mounting drives with no enclosure minimum volume specified, you have no restrictions on the enclosure size, but you must follow air clearances specified in the drive hardware manuals for sufficient ventilation around each drive.
- 4. Ratings in the tables are maximum for the given circuit breaker frame size. Breakers of the same frame size and interrupting rating with lower current ratings are also allowed.

Circuit breakers (UL)

ABB inverse time circuit breakers

The drives are suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 65 kA symmetrical amperes (RMS) at 240 V, 480 V, and 600 V maximum when protected by circuit breakers in the tables below.

Additional fuse protection is not required when using the circuit breakers herein. Circuit breakers are not required to be in the same enclosure as the drive.

Rules below must be followed when using these breakers. Follow rules 1...9 for all drives when implementing circuit breakers. Then follow rules 10...18 depending upon the drive voltage rating.

For more information see the manual supplement (3AXD50000645015 [English]).

230 V circuit breakers

ACS880- 01	Frame	Input current	Circuit breaker maxim- um cur- rent	Circuit breaker voltage	Enclos- ure min- imum volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)
		Α	Α	V	in ³	in ³	65 kA @ 240 V
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V		·		•			
04A6-2	R1	4.4	15	240	#	681	ΧΤ2Ναβ015#******
06A6-2	R1	6.3	15	240	‡	681	ΧΤ2Ναβ015#******
07A5-2	R1	7.1	15	240	‡	681	ΧΤ2Ναβ015#******
10A6-2	R1	10.1	15	240	‡	681	ΧΤ2Ναβ015#******
16A8-2	R2	16.0	40	240	‡	750	ΧΤ2Ναβ040#******

ACS880- 01	Frame	Input current	Circuit breaker maxim- um cur- rent		Enclos- ure min- imum volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)
		A	A	V	in ³	in ³	65 kA @ 240 V
24A3-2	R2	23.1	40	240	‡	750	ΧΤ2Ναβ040#*****
031A-2	R3	29.3	50	240	‡	1011	ΧΤ2Ναβ050#******
046A-2	R4	44	100	240	‡	1669	ΧΤ2Ναβ100#******
061A-2	R4	58	100	240	‡	1669	ΧΤ2Ναβ100#*****
075A-2	R5	72	150	240	‡	2030	ΧΤ4Ναβ150#******
087A-2	R5	83	150	240	‡	2030	ΧΤ4Ναβ150#*****
115A-2	R6	109	200	240	‡	2880	ΧΤ4Ναβ200#*****
145A-2	R6	138	200	240	‡	2880	ΧΤ4Ναβ200#*****
170A-2	R7	162	300	240	‡	3369	ΧΤ5Ναβ30Α#******
206A-2	R7	196	300	240	‡	3369	ΧΤ5Ναβ30Α#******
274A-2	R8	260	400	240	‡	3858	ΧΤ5Ναβ40Α#******

‡ Enclosure minimum volume is not applicable

Follow rules 1...11 below.

480 V circuit breakers

ACS880- 01	Frame	Input cur- rent	Circuit break- er maxim- um cur- rent	Circuit break- er voltage	ure minim-	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)	Maxim- um l ² t	Maxim- um I peak
		Α	A	V	in ³	in ³	65 kA @ 480 V	A ² s	kA
U _n = 480	V								
02A1-5	R1	2.1	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
03A0-5	R1	3.0	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#*****	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
03A4-5	R1	3.4	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#*****	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
04A8-5	R1	4.8	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#*****	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
05A2-5	R1	5.2	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#*****	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
07A6-5	R1	7.6	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#*****	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
11A0-5	R1	11	15	480	8100	681	ΧΤ2Ηαβ015#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2

ACS880- 01	Frame	Input cur- rent	Circuit break- er maxim- um cur- rent	Circuit break- er voltage	Enclos- ure minim- um volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)	Maxim- um <i>l</i> ² t	Maxim- um <i>I</i> peak
		Α	Α	V	in ³	in ³	65 kA @ 480 V	A ² s	kA
014A-5	R2	14	30	480	27720	750	ΧΤ2Ηαβ030#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
021A-5	R2	21	30	480	27720	750	ΧΤ2Ηαβ030#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
027A-5	R3	27	50	480	27720	1011	ΧΤ2Ηαβ050#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
034A-5	R3	34	50	480	27720	1011	ΧΤ2Ηαβ050#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
040A-5	R4	40	70	480	30240	1669	ΧΤ2Ηαβ070#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
052A-5	R4	52	70	480	30240	1669	ΧΤ2Ηαβ070#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
065A-5	R5	65	125	480	30240	2030	ΧΤ2Ηαβ125#*****	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
077A-5	R5	77	125	480	30240	2030	ΧΤ2Ηαβ125#******	0.51x10 ⁶	23.2
096A-5	R6	96	225	480	16200	2880	ΧΤ4Ηαβ225#******	0.98x10 ⁶	30
124A-5	R6	124	225	480	16200	2880	ΧΤ4Ηαβ225#******	0.98x10 ⁶	30
156A-5	R7	156	250	480	18900	3369	ΧΤ4Ηαβ250#******	0.98x10 ⁶	30
180A-5	R7	180	250	480	18900	3369	ΧΤ4Ηαβ250#******	0.98x10 ⁶	30
240A-5	R8	240	400	480	32400	3858	ΧΤ5Ηαβ40Α#******	4.2x10 ⁶	47.9
260A-5	R8	260	400	480	32400	3858	ΧΤ5Ηαβ40Α#******	4.2x10 ⁶	47.9
302A-5	R9	302	600	480	32400	5226	ΧΤ5Ηαβ60Β#******	4.2x10 ⁶	47.9
361A-5	R9	361	600	480	32400	5226	ΧΤ5Ηαβ60Β#******	4.2x10 ⁶	47.9
414A-5	R9	414	600	480	32400	5226	ΧΤ5Ηαβ60Β#******	4.2x10 ⁶	47.9
477A-5	R9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Follow rules 1...9 and 12...17 below.

600 V circuit breakers

ACS880- 01	Frame	Input cur- rent	Circuit break- er maxim- um cur- rent	Circuit break- er voltage	Enclos- ure minim- um volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)	Maxim- um <i>l</i> ² t	Maxim- um / peak
		A	A	V	in ³	in ³	65 kA @ 600 V	A ² s	kA
U _n = 575 \	/								
07A4-7	R3	7	35	600	28980	1011	ΧΤ4Vαβ035#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
09A9-7	R3	9.4	35	600	28980	1011	ΧΤ4Vαβ035#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5

ACS880- 01	Frame	Input cur- rent	Circuit break- er maxim- um cur- rent	Circuit break- er voltage	Enclos- ure minim- um volume	Drive volume	Circuit breaker (ABB)	Maxim- um <i>l</i> ² t	Maxim- um / peak
		Α	Α	V	in ³	in ³	65 kA @ 600 V	A ² s	kA
14A3-7	R3	13.6	35	600	28980	1011	ΧΤ4Vαβ035#******	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
019A-7	R3	18	35	600	28980	1011	ΧΤ4Vαβ035#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
023A-7	R3	22	35	600	28980	1011	ΧΤ4Vαβ035#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
027A-7	R3	27	35	600	28980	1011	ΧΤ4Vαβ035#******	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
035A-7	R5	41	70	600	28980	2030	ΧΤ4Vαβ070#******	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
042A-7	R5	52	70	600	28980	2030	ΧΤ4Vαβ070#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
049A-7	R5	52	70	600	28980	2030	ΧΤ4Vαβ070#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
061A-7	R6	62	125	600	24840	2880	ΧΤ4Vαβ125#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
084A-7	R6	77	125	600	24840	2880	ΧΤ4Vαβ125#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
098A-7	R7	99	200	600	18900	3369	ΧΤ4Vαβ200#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
119A-7	R7	125	200	600	18900	3369	ΧΤ4Vαβ200#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
142A-7	R8	144	250	600	32400	3858	ΧΤ4Vαβ250#******	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
174A-7	R8	180	250	600	32400	3858	ΧΤ4Vαβ250#*****	1.2x10 ⁶	31.5
210A-7	R9	242	400	600	32400	5226	ΧΤ5Lαβ40Α#*****	4.2x10 ⁶	51.4
271A-7	R9	271	400	600	32400	5226	ΧΤ5Lαβ40Α#******	4.2x10 ⁶	51.4

Follow rules 1...9, 12...13 and 18 below.

Notes:

- Drives that have an enclosure minimum volume listed must be mounted in an enclosure ≥ enclosure minimum volume specified in the tables above.
- When multiple drives that have an enclosure minimum volume specified are installed in the same enclosure, minimum volume of the enclosure is determined by the largest enclosure minimum volume of the drives to be placed in the enclosure, plus the volume(s) of each additional drive.
- 3. For UL Open Type, UL Type 1 or UL Type 12 drives that have a minimum enclosure volume indicated with ‡, no minimum enclosure volume is required but the drive must be mounted inside an enclosure.
- 4. If combining a drive with an enclosure minimum volume specified and others with an enclosure minimum volume indicated with ‡, start with the largest specified enclosure minimum volume listed and add the drive volumes for the other drives.

- If you are only mounting drives with no enclosure minimum volume specified, you have no restrictions on the enclosure size, but follow air clearances specified in the drive hardware manuals for sufficient ventilation around each drive.
- UL Open Type, UL Type 1 and UL Type 12 drives can be used inside of the
 enclosure. Use drive volume for all three types listed in the table when installing
 multiple drives in the enclosure.
- 7. The ABB circuit breaker part number listed in the table is a base part number.
 - Symbol α represents 80% or 100% allowable continuous current. Options allowed are U, Q, C and D.
 - Symbol β represents the number of poles for the breaker. Options allowed are 3 and 4.
 - Symbol # represents trip units. Trip units allowed include A thru C, E thru L, P thru Z. If using Ekip breakers, set the overload current of the circuit breaker equal to or less than the value shown in the "CB Maximum Current" column in the tables above.
 - The digits indicated with an "*" represent accessories for the breakers and have no impact on the drive UL listing or performance or rating of the breaker.
 - For the ABB circuit breaker configurator refer to: https://lowvoltage-configurator.tnb.com/configurator/#/config/tmax_xt.
- 8. Ratings in the tables are maximum for the given circuit breaker frame size. Breakers of the same frame size and interrupting rating with lower current ratings are also allowed.
- 9. Do not use a circuit breaker with a lower KAIC rating even if the available short-circuit current is less than 65 kA.
- 10. **For 230 V drives:** 230 V drives were tested with ABB inverse time circuit breakers rated at 65 kA and 240 V. Other manufacturers' inverse time circuit breakers can be used if they are UL 489 listed, they are 240 V or higher, they have a 65 kA or higher interrupting rating and they have the same or lower nominal current rating than the ABB specified circuit breaker.
- 11. For 230 V drives: Current limiting inverse time circuit breakers must not be used.
- 12. **For 480 V and 600 V drives:** When designing UL508A panels, Article SB 4.2.3 Exception No. 3 allows the use of other manufacturers' current limiting inverse time circuit breakers which have same voltage, current and interrupting rating, if I_{peak} and I^2t are the same or less than the ABB specified circuit breaker.
- 13. For 480 V and 600 V drives: Do not use non-current limiting inverse time circuit breakers.
- 14. For 480 V drives: Enclosures for frames R1 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly

- below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.
- 15. For 480 V drives: Enclosures for frame R6 must have a solid top directly above the drive. Fans, filters our louvers cannot be mounted directly above the drive.
- 16. **For 480 V drives:** Only R8 frame drives with serial numbers beginning 1204107353 when built in Finland and 2205002140 when built in the U.S. may be protected with circuit breakers listed in the tables above.
- 17. **For 480 V drives:** Only R9 frame drives with serial numbers beginning 1204205581 when built in Finland and beginning 22106xxxxx when built in the U.S. may be protected with circuit breakers listed in the tables above.
- 18. **For 600 V drives:** Enclosures for frames R3, R5 and R9 must have a solid bottom directly below the drive. i.e. fans, filters or louvers cannot be mounted directly below the drive but can be mounted in adjacent areas on the bottom of the enclosure.
- 19. You can use alternative circuit breakers if they meet certain characteristics. For acceptable breakers, refer to Branch Circuit Protection for ABB drives manual supplement (3AXD50000645015 [English]).

Dimensions, weights and free space requirements

Frame			IP21		
	H1	H2	W	D	Weight
	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg
R1	409	376	155	226	7.0
R2	409	376	155	249	8.4
R3	475	436	173	261	10.8
R4	580	563	203	274	18.6
R5	732	653	203	274	22.8
R6	727	593	252	357	42.2
R7	880	645	284	365	53.0
R8	965	724	300	386	68.0
R9	955	723	380	413	95.0 ¹⁾

^{1) 98.0} kg for 453A-4, 490A-3 and 477A-5

Frame		UL type 1								
	H1	H2	W	D	Weight					
	in	in	in	in	lb					
R1	16.11	14.80	6.10	8.89	15					
R2	16.11	14.80	6.10	9.80	19					
R3	18.71	17.17	6.81	10.28	24					
R4	22.85	22.17	7.99	10.79	41					
R5	28.80	25.70	7.99	10.77	50					
R6	28.60	22.35	9.92	14.10	93					
R7	34.66	25.39	11.18	14.35	117					
R8	38.01	28.50	11.81	15.21	150					
R9	37.59	28.46	14.96	16.27	209 ¹⁾					

^{1) 216} lb for 453A-4, 490A-3 and 477A-5.

Frame				IP55			
	H1	H2	НЗ	w	W2	D	Weight
	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg
R1	450	-	450	162	162	292	8.1
R2	450	-	450	161	161	315	9.5
R3	525	-	525	180	180	327	12.0
R4	580	-	735	203	236	344	19.1
R5	732	-	886	203	236	344	23.4
R6	727	-	884	252	291	421	42.9
R7	880	-	1038	284	324	423	54.0
R8	966	-	1123	300	350	452	74.0
R9	955	-	1187	380	430	477	102.0
R9 ¹⁾	955	-	1187	380	430	517	108.0

¹⁾ drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5

Frame		UL Type 12									
	H1	H2	Н3	W	W2	D	Weight				
	in	in	in	in	in	in	lb				
R1	17.72	-	17.72	6.38	6.38	11.50	18				

Frame				UL Type 12			
	H1	H2	НЗ	W	W2	D	Weight
	in	in	in	in	in	in	lb
R2	17.72	-	17.72	6.34	6.34	12.40	21
R3	20.70	-	20.70	7.09	7.09	12.87	26
R4	22.85	-	28.94	7.99	9.29	13.53	42
R5	28.80	-	34.88	7.99	9.29	13.53	52
R6	28.60	-	34.80	9.92	11.46	16.59	95
R7	34.66	-	40.87	11.18	12.76	16.65	119
R8	38.01	-	44.21	11.81	13.78	17.78	163
R9	37.59	-	46.73	14.96	16.93	18.78	225
R9 ¹⁾	37.59	-	46.73	14.96	16.93	20.35	238

¹⁾ drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5

- H1 Height with cable entry box
- H2 Height without cable entry box (option +P940)
- H3 Height with hood
- W Width with cable entry box
- W2 Width with hood
- D Depth with cable entry box

For more information on dimensions, refer to chapter Technical data (page 203).

For dimensions and weights of option +P940 and +P944, refer to ACS880...+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement (3AUA0000145446 [English]).

For dimensions of option +C135, refer to ACS880-01...+C135 drives with flange mounting kit supplement (3AXD50000349814 [English]). For the additional weight of the flange mounting kit, refer to the table below.

Frame	Weight of flange mounting kit (option +C135)				
	kg	lb			
R1	2.9	6			
R2	3.1	7			
R3	4.5	10			

Frame	Weight of flange mounting kit (option +C135)			
	kg	lb		
R4	4.7	10		
R5	4.7	10		
R6	4.5	10		
R7	5	11		
R8	6	13		
R9	7	15		

Package dimensions

Frame		Package	
	Length	Width	Height
	mm	mm	mm
R1 (IP21)	574	256	281
R1 (IP55)	574	256	364
R2 (IP21)	574	256	304
R2 (IP55)	574	256	386
R3 (IP21)	624	256	316
R3 (IP55)	624	256	399
R4 (IP21)	691	290	329
R4 (IP55)	691	290	415
R5 (IP21)	896	293	329
R5 (IP55)	896	293	415
R6	870	325	580
R7	992	400	568
R8	1145	485	655
R9	1145	485	655

Free space requirements

200 mm (7.87 in) free space is required at top of the drive.

300 mm (11.81 in) free space (when measured from the drive base without the cable entry box) is required at bottom of the drive.

Losses, cooling data and noise

ACS880- 01	Frame	Air	flow	Typical power loss 1)	Noise
		m³/h	ft ³ /min	W	dB(A)
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V					
04A6-2	R1	44	26	61	50
06A6-2	R1	44	26	85	50
07A5-2	R1	44	26	96	50
10A6-2	R1	44	26	149	50
16A8-2	R2	88	52	210	59
24A3-2	R2	88	52	368	59
031A-2	R3	134	79	354	60
046A-2	R4	134	79	541	64
061A-2	R4	280	165	804	64
075A-2	R5	280	165	925	64
087A-2	R5	280	165	1142	64
115A-2	R6	435	256	1362	68
145A-2	R6	435	256	1935	68
170A-2	R7	450	265	1968	67
206A-2	R7	450	265	2651	67
274A-2	R8	550	324	3448	68
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V					
02A4-3	R1	44	26	43	50
03A3-3	R1	44	26	52	50
04A0-3	R1	44	26	59	50
05A6-3	R1	44	26	78	50
07A2-3	R1	44	26	112	50
09A4-3	R1	44	26	146	50
12A6-3	R1	44	26	217	50
017A-3	R2	88	52	235	59
025A-3	R2	88	52	412	59
032A-3	R3	134	79	400	60

ACS880- 01	Frame	Air	flow	Typical power loss ¹⁾	Noise
		m³/h	ft ³ /min	W	dB(A)
038A-3	R3	134	79	515	60
045A-3	R4	134	79	526	64
061A-3	R4	280	165	818	64
072A-3	R5	280	165	841	64
087A-3	R5	280	165	1129	64
105A-3	R6	435	256	1215	68
145A-3	R6	435	256	1962	68
169A-3	R7	450	265	2042	67
206A-3	R7	450	265	2816	67
246A-3	R8	550	324	3026	68
293A-3	R8	550	324	3630	68
363A-3	R9	1150	677	4688	70
430A-3	R9	1150	677	5797	70
490A-3	R9	1150	677	6616	70
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V					
02A1-5	R1	44	26	42	50
03A0-5	R1	44	26	50	50
03A4-5	R1	44	26	55	50
04A8-5	R1	44	26	71	50
05A2-5	R1	44	26	76	50
07A6-5	R1	44	26	110	50
11A0-5	R1	44	26	180	50
014A-5	R2	88	52	191	59
021A-5	R2	88	52	330	59
027A-5	R3	134	79	326	60
034A-5	R3	134	79	454	60
040A-5	R4	134	79	424	64
052A-5	R4	280	165	600	64
065A-5	R5	280	165	715	64
077A-5	R5	280	165	916	64

ACS880- 01	Frame	Air	flow	Typical power loss 1)	Noise
		m³/h	ft ³ /min	w	dB(A)
096A-5	R6	435	256	1157	68
124A-5	R6	435	256	1673	68
156A-5	R7	450	265	1840	67
180A-5	R7	450	265	2281	67
240A-5	R8	550	324	2912	68
260A-5	R8	550	324	3325	68
302A-5	R9	1150	677	3663	70
361A-5	R9	1150	677	4781	70
414A-5	R9	1150	677	5672	70
477A-5	R9	1150	677	6812	70
U _n = 690 V	,				
07A4-7	R3	134	79	101	60
09A9-7	R3	134	79	128	60
14A3-7	R3	134	79	189	60
019A-7	R3	134	79	271	60
023A-7	R3	134	79	338	60
027A-7	R3	134	79	426	60
035A-7	R5	280	165	416	64
042A-7	R5	280	165	524	64
049A-7	R5	280	165	650	64
061A-7	R6	435	256	852	68
084A-7	R6	435	256	1303	68
098A-7	R7	450	265	1416	67
119A-7	R7	450	265	1881	67
142A-7	R8	550	324	1970	68
174A-7	R8	550	324	2670	68
210A-7	R9	1150	677	2903	70
271A-7	R9	1150	677	4182	70

¹⁾ Typical drive losses when it operates at 90% of the motor nominal frequency and 100% of the motor nominal current.

Cooling air flow and heat dissipation for flange mounting (option +C135)

ACS880- Fran 01		Air flow (option +C135)			ssipation n +C135)
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	w	W
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V					
04A6-2	R1	44	9	36	25
06A6-2	R1	44	9	59	26
07A5-2	R1	44	9	70	26
10A6-2	R1	44	9	123	27
16A8-2	R2	88	16	170	39
24A3-2	R2	88	16	324	44
031A-2	R3	134	22	298	56
046A-2	R4	134	32	449	93
061A-2	R4	280	32	690	114
075A-2	R5	280	42	804	121
087A-2	R5	280	42	1002	140
115A-2	R6	435	52	1214	147
145A-2	R6	435	52	1767	168
170A-2	R7	450	75	1790	179
206A-2	R7	450	75	2443	208
274A-2	R8	550	120	3173	274
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V					
02A4-3	R1	44	9	18	25
03A3-3	R1	44	9	27	25
04A0-3	R1	44	9	34	25
05A6-3	R1	44	9	52	26
07A2-3	R1	44	9	86	26
09A4-3	R1	44	9	120	27
12A6-3	R1	44	9	189	28
017A-3	R2	88	16	196	40

ACS880- 01	Frame	Air flow (op	otion +C135)		ssipation n +C135)
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	W	W
025A-3	R2	88	16	367	45
032A-3	R3	134	22	343	57
038A-3	R3	134	22	451	64
045A-3	R4	134	32	436	90
061A-3	R4	280	32	704	114
072A-3	R5	280	42	726	115
087A-3	R5	280	42	988	141
105A-3	R6	435	52	1075	140
145A-3	R6	435	52	1798	164
169A-3	R7	450	75	1853	189
206A-3	R7	450	75	2593	223
246A-3	R8	550	120	2766	261
293A-3	R8	550	120	3317	313
363A-3	R9	1150	677	4286	401
430A-3	R9	1150	677	5332	465
490A-3	R9	1150	677	5190	713
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V					
02A1-5	R1	44	9	17	25
03A0-5	R1	44	9	25	25
03A4-5	R1	44	9	29	25
04A8-5	R1	44	9	45	26
05A2-5	R1	44	9	51	26
07A6-5	R1	44	9	84	26
11A0-5	R1	44	9	153	27
014A-5	R2	88	16	152	38
021A-5	R2	88	16	288	42
027A-5	R3	134	22	273	53
034A-5	R3	134	22	394	60

ACS880- 01	Frame	Air flow (op	otion +C135)		ssipation n +C135)
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	W	W
040A-5	R4	134	32	340	84
052A-5	R4	280	32	501	99
065A-5	R5	280	42	609	106
077A-5	R5	280	42	792	124
096A-5	R6	435	52	1019	137
124A-5	R6	435	52	1521	153
156A-5	R7	450	75	1662	178
180A-5	R7	450	75	2083	198
240A-5	R8	550	120	2659	253
260A-5	R8	550	120	3050	274
302A-5	R9	1150	677	3311	352
361A-5	R9	1150	677	4379	403
414A-5	R9	1150	677	5217	455
477A-5	R9	1150	677	5256	778
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V					
07A4-7	R3	134	22	60	41
09A9-7	R3	134	22	87	42
14A3-7	R3	134	22	146	43
019A-7	R3	134	22	226	45
023A-7	R3	134	22	290	47
027A-7	R3	134	22	376	50
035A-7	R5	280	42	337	78
042A-7	R5	280	42	440	84
049A-7	R5	280	42	560	90
061A-7	R6	435	52	729	122
084A-7	R6	435	52	1173	130
098A-7	R7	450	75	1276	140
119A-7	R7	450	75	1730	151

ACS880- 01	Frame	Air flow (op	tion +C135)		sipation +C135)
		Heatsink	Front	Heatsink	Front
		m³/h	m³/h	W	W
142A-7	R8	550	120	1797	173
174A-7	R8	550	120	2476	194
210A-7	R9	1150	170	2612	291
271A-7	R9	1150	170	3853	329

Connector and entry data for the power cables

IEC

Input, motor, resistor and DC cable terminal screw sizes, accepted wire sizes (per phase) and tightening torques (\mathcal{T}) are given below. I denotes stripping length inside the connector.

Frame	Cable entries		L1, L2, L3, T1/	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W				Grounding terminals		
	Ø*		pcs	Ø*	Wire size	,	vire ew)	1	Max. wire size	T
		mm	mm²	М	N⋅m	mm	mm ²	N⋅m		
R1	2	17	0.756	-	0.6	8	25	1.8		
R2	2	17	0.756	-	0.6	8	25	1.8		
R3	2	21	0.516	-	1.7	10	25	1.8		
R4	2	24	0.535	-	3.3	18	25	2.9		
R5	2	35	670	M8	15	18	35	2.9		
R6	2	45	25150	M10	30	30	185	9.8		
R7	2	54	95240 (25150**)	M10	40 (30**)	30	185	9.8		
R8	4	45	2 × (50150)	M10	40	30	2×185	9.8		
R9	4	54	2 × (95240)	M12	70	30	2×185	9.8		

Frame	Cable	entries	ies R-, R+/UDC+ and UDC- termi			
	Ø*		Wire size	T (wire	screw)	I
	pcs	mm	mm ²	М	N∙m	mm
R1	1	17	0.756	-	0.6	8

Frame	Frame Cable entrie		rame Cable entries R-, R+/UDC+ and U			terminal	s	
		ø*	Wire size	T (wire	screw)	1		
	pcs mm		mm²	М	N⋅m	mm		
R2	1	17	0.756	-	0.6	8		
R3	1	17	0.516	-	1.7	10		
R4	1	24	0.535	-	3.3	18		
R5	1	35	670	М8	15	18		
R6	1	35	2595	M8	20	30		
R7	1	43	25150	M10	30	30		
R8	2	45	2 × (50150)	M10	40	30		
R9	2	54	2 × (95240)	M12	70	30		

^{*} maximum cable diameter accepted. For the entry plate hole diameters, refer to Dimension drawings.

Note:

- The minimum specified wire size does not necessarily have sufficient current carrying capacity at maximum load.
- The terminals do not accept a conductor that is one size larger than the maximum specified wire size.
- For frames R1...R7: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 1. For frames R8 and R9: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 2.
- When you use a cable size smaller than what is accepted by the terminal, remove
 the terminal and use suitable cable lugs for connecting the cable directly under
 the head of the bolt.

UL

Input, motor, resistor and DC cable terminal screw sizes, accepted wire sizes (per phase) and tightening torques (7) in US units are given below. I denotes stripping length inside the connector

Frame	Cable	entries	L1, L2, L3, T1/	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W			Grounding term	ninals
	pcs	Ø*	Wire size		Wire ew)	1	Max. wire size	<i>T</i>
		in	kcmil/AWG	М	lbf·ft	in	AWG	lbf·ft
R1	2	0.67	1410	-	0.44	0.31	4	1.3

^{** 525...690} V drives

Frame	Cable	entries	L1, L2, L3, T1/	L1, L2, L3, T1/U, T2/V, T3/W				
	pcs	ø*	Wire size	•	Vire ew)	I	Max. wire size	T
	-	in	kcmil/AWG	М	lbf∙ft	in	AWG	lbf·ft
R2	2	0.67	1410	-	0.44	0.31	4	1.3
R3	2	0.83	206	-	1.25	0.39	4	1.3
R4	2	0.94	202	-	2.4	0.70	4	2.1
R5	2	1.37	61/0	М8	11.0	0.70	2	2.1
R6	2	1.77	4300 MCM	M10	22.1	1.18	350 MCM	7.2
R7	2	2.13	3/0400 MCM (4300 MCM**)	M10	29.5 (22.1**)	1.18	350 MCM	7.2
R8	4	1.77	2 × (1/0300 MCM)	M10	29.5	1.18	2× 350 MCM	7.2
R9	4	2.13	2 × (3/0500 MCM)	M12	51.6	1.18	2× 350 MCM	7.2

Frame	e Cable entries		R-, R+/UDC+ and UDC- terminals				
-		Ø*	Wire size	T (wire	screw)	1	
	pcs	in	kcmil/AWG	М	lbf∙ft	in	
R1	1	0.67	1410	-	0.44	0.31	
R2	1	0.67	1410	-	0.44	0.31	
R3	1	0.67	206	-	1.25	0.39	
R4	1	0.94	202	-	2.4	0.70	
R5	1	1.37	61/0	М8	11.0	1.18	
R6	1	1.38	43/0	M8	14.8	1.18	
R7	1	1.69	4300 MCM	M10	22,1	1.18	
R8	2	1.77	2 × (1/0300 MCM)	M10	29.5	1.18	
R9	2	2.13	2 × (3/0500 MCM)	M12	51.6	1.18	

^{*} maximum cable diameter accepted. Cable connector inside diameter: 3/4" (frames R1 and R2), 1" (R3). For the entry plate hole diameters, refer to Dimension drawings.

^{** 525...690} V drives

Note:

- The minimum specified wire size does not necessarily have sufficient current carrying capacity at maximum load.
- For IEC installations using mm² cable, the terminals do not accept a conductor that is one size larger than the recommended wire size. For NEC installations using AWG cable, this applies only to the R2 frame drive.
- <u>For frames R1...R7:</u> The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 1. <u>For</u> frames R8 and R9: The maximum number of conductors per terminal is 2.

Connector data for the control cables

Refer to chapter Control unit.

Typical power cables

The table below gives typical copper and aluminum cable types with concentric copper shield for the drives with nominal current. For terminal and entry data for power cables, refer to Connector and entry data for the power cables (page 269).

Note: Aluminum cables are not allowed in NEC installations.

Drive type	Frame size	IEC	UL (NEC) ²⁾		
ACS880- 01	Jize _	Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type	
		mm²	mm²	AWG/kcmil	
<i>U</i> _n = 230 V					
04A6-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14	
06A6-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14	
07A5-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14	
10A6-2	R1	3×1.5	-	14	
16A8-2	R2	3×6	-	10	
24A3-2	R2	3×6	-	8	
031A-2	R3	3×10	-	8	
046A-2	R4	3×16	-	6	
061A-2	R4	3×25	-	4	
075A-2	R5	3×35	3×50	3	
087A-2	R5	3×35	3×70	2	
115A-2	R6	3×50	3×70	1/0	

Drive type	Frame size	IE	UL (NEC) ²⁾		
ACS880- 01	3126	Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type	
		mm²	mm ²	AWG/kcmil	
145A-2	R6	3×95	3×120	3/0	
170A-2	R7	3×120	3×150	4/0	
206A-2	R7	3×150	3x240	300 MCM	
274A-2	R8	2 × (3x95) ³⁾	2 × (3×120)	2 × 2/0	
<i>U</i> _n = 400 V			I.		
02A4-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
03A3-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
04A0-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
05A6-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
07A2-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
09A4-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
12A6-3	R1	3x1.5	-	14	
017A-3	R2	3x6	-	10	
025A-3	R2	3x6	-	10	
032A-3	R3	3x10	-	8	
038A-3	R3	3x10	-	8	
045A-3	R4	3x16	-	6	
061A-3	R4	3x25	-	4	
072A-3	R5	3x35	3x50	3	
087A-3	R5	3x35	3x70	3	
105A-3	R6	3x50	3x70	1	
145A-3	R6	3x95	3x120	2/0	
169A-3	R7	3x120	3x150	3/0	
206A-3	R7	3x150	3x240	250 MCM	
246A-3	R8	2 × (3x70) ³⁾	2 × (3x95)	300 MCM	
293A-3	R8	2 × (3x95) ³⁾	2 × (3x120)	2 × 3/0	
363A-3	R9	2 × (3x120)	2 × (3x185)	2 × 4/0	
430A-3	R9	2 × (3x150)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 250 MCM	
490A-3	R9	2 × (3x240)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 500 MCM	

Drive type	Frame size	IEC	C ¹⁾	UL (NEC) ²⁾
ACS880- 01	Size	Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type
		mm²	mm²	AWG/kcmil
<i>U</i> _n = 500 V				•
02A1-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
03A0-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
03A4-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
04A8-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
05A2-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
07A6-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
11A0-5	R1	3x1.5	-	14
014A-5	R2	3x6	-	10
021A-5	R2	3x6	-	10
027A-5	R3	3x10	-	8
034A-5	R3	3x10	-	8
040A-5	R4	3x16	-	6
052A-5	R4	3x25	-	4
065A-5	R5	3x35	3x35	4
077A-5	R5	3x35	3x50	3
096A-5	R6	3x50	3x70	1/0
124A-5	R6	3x95	3x95	2/0
156A-5	R7	3x120	3x150	3/0
180A-5	R7	3x150	3x185	4/0
240A-5	R8	2 × (3x70) ³⁾	2 × (3x95)	2 × 1/0 or 350 MCM
260A-5	R8	2 × (3x70) ³⁾	2 × (3x95)	2 × 2/0
302A-5	R9	2 × (3x95)	2 × (3x120)	2 × 3/0
361A-5	R9	2 × (3x120)	2 × (3x185)	2 × 4/0
414A-5	R9	2 × (3x150)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 300 MCM
477A-5	R9	2 × (3×240)	2 × (3x240)	2 × 500 MCM
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V				
07A4-7	R3	3x1.5	-	14
09A9-7	R3	3x1.5	-	14

Drive type	Frame size	IEC	C ¹⁾	UL (NEC) ²⁾	
ACS880- 01		Cu cable type	Al cable type	Cu cable type	
		mm²	mm²	AWG/kcmil	
14A3-7	R3	3x2.5	-	12	
019A-7	R3	3x4	-	10	
023A-7	R3	3x6	-	10	
027A-7	R3	3x10	-	8	
035A-7	R5	3x10	3x25	6	
042A-7	R5	3x16	3x25	6	
049A-7	R5	3x16	3x25	6	
061A-7	R6	3x25	3x35	4	
084A-7	R6	3x35	3x50	3	
098A-7	R7	3x50	3x70	1/0	
119A-7	R7	3x70	3x95	2/0	
142A-7	R8	3x95 ³⁾	3x120	3/0	
174A-7	R8	3x120 ³⁾	3x150	4/0	
210A-7	R9	3x185	2 × (3x95)	350 MCM	
271A-7	R9	3x240	2 × (3x120)	500 MCM	

¹⁾ The cable selection is based on max. 9 cables laid on a cable ladder side by side, three ladder type trays one on top of the other, ambient temperature 30 °C (86 °F) PVC insulation, surface temperature 70 °C (158 °F) (EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-52). For other conditions, select the cables according to local safety regulations, appropriate input voltage and the load current of the drive.

Refer to Connector and entry data for the power cables (page 269) for the accepted cable sizes of the drive.

Temperature: For IEC, select a cable rated for at least 70 °C maximum permissible temperature of conductor in continuous use. For North America, power cables must be rated for 75 °C (167 °F) or higher.

Voltage: 600 V AC cable is accepted for up to 500 V AC. 750 V AC cable is accepted for up to 600 V AC. 1000 V AC cable is accepted for up to 690 V AC.

²⁾ The cable selection is based on NEC Table 310-16 for copper wires, 75 °C (167 °F) wire insulation at 40 °C (104 °F) ambient temperature. Not more than three current-carrying conductors in raceway or cable or earth (directly buried). For other conditions, dimension the cables according to local safety regulations, appropriate input voltage and the load current of the drive.

³⁾ The biggest cable size accepted by the connection terminals of frame R8 is 2 × (3×150) or 2 × 4/0. In IEC installations, the biggest possible cable size is 3x240 or 400 MCM if the terminal type is changed and the cable entry box is not used.

Electrical power network specification

Voltage (U ₁)	ACS880-01-xxxx-2 drives: 208 240 V AC 3-phase +10%15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3~230 V AC.
	ACS880-01-xxxx-3 drives: 380 \dots 415 V AC 3-phase +10%15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage level 3~400 V AC.
	ACS880-01-xxxx-5 drives: $380\dots500\text{V}$ AC 3-phase +10%15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels $3\sim400/480/500\text{V}$ AC.
	ACS880-01-xxxx-7 drives: 525 690 V AC 3-phase +10%15%. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical input voltage levels 3~525/600/690 V AC.
Network type	TN (grounded) and IT (ungrounded) systems. However, 690 V drives must not be installed on corner-grounded or midpoint-grounded delta systems.
Rated conditional short-circuit current Icc (IEC 61439-1)	Maximum allowable prospective short-circuit current is 65 kA when protected by fuses given in the fuse tables.
Short-circuit current protection rating (UL 61800-5-1, CSA C22.2 No.274-17)	US and Canada: The drive is suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 kA symmetrical amperes rms at 600 V maximum when protected by fuses given in the fuse table.
Frequency (f ₁)	50/60 Hz, variation ± 5%, maximum rate of change 17%/s
Imbalance	Max. ± 3% of nominal phase to phase input voltage
Fundamental power factor (cos phi ₁)	0.98 (at nominal load)

Motor connection data

Motor types	Asynchronous AC induction motors, permanent magnet synchronous motors, AC induction servomotors and ABB synchronous reluctance motors (SynRM motors)
Voltage (U ₂)	0 to U_1 , 3-phase symmetrical. This is indicated in the type designation label as typical output voltage level as 3 0 U_1 , $U_{\rm max}$ at the field weakening point.
Frequency (f ₂)	0598 Hz For drives with du/dt filter: 0120 Hz For drives with sine filter: 0120 Hz
Current	See section Ratings.

Maximum recommended motor cable length	Frames R1R3: 150 m (492 ft) Frames R4 to R9: 300 m (984 ft) With motor cables longer than 150 m (492 ft) or switching frequencies higher than default, the EMC Directive requirements may not be fulfilled.
	Note: Longer motor cables cause a motor voltage decrease which limits the available motor power. The decrease depends on the motor cable length and characteristics. A sine filter (optional) at the drive output also causes voltage decrease. Contact ABB for more information.

Efficiency

Approximately 98% at nominal power level.

The efficiency is not calculated according to the ecodesign standard IEC 61800-9-2.

Energy efficiency data (ecodesign)

Energy efficiency data according to IEC 61800-9-2 is available from the ecodesign tool (https://ecodesign.drivesmotors.abb.com). The drive complies with the IE efficiency class IE2.



Protection classes

Degree of protection (IEC/EN 60529)	IP21, IP55. Option +P940 and +P944: IP20
Enclosure type (UL 50/50E)	UL Type 1, UL Type 12. Option +P940: UL Open Type. For indoor use only.
Overvoltage category (IEC 60664-1)	III

Protective class	I
(IEC/EN 61800-5-1)	

Ambient conditions

Environmental limits for the drive, including installed options, are given below. Use the drive in a heated, indoor, controlled environment.

	Operation	Storage	Transportation		
	installed for stationary use	in the package	in the package		
Installation site altitude	0 to 4000 m (13123 ft) above sea level ¹⁾	-	-		
	Above 1000 m (3281 ft) ²⁾ : refer to section Deratings (page 213).				
Air temperature	-15 to +55 °C (5 to 131 °F) ³⁾ . No frost allowed. Refer to section Deratings (page 213).	-40 to +70 °C (-40 to +158 °F)	-40 to +70 °C (-40 to +158 °F)		
Relative humid-	5 to 95%	Max. 95%	Max. 95%		
ity	No condensation allowed. Maximum allowed relative humidity is 60% ⁴⁾ in the presence of corrosive gases.				
Contamination	IEC 60721-3-3:2019,	IEC 60721-3-1:1997	IEC 60721-3-2:1997		
	ISO 9223				
	ANSI-ISA 71.04				

Chemical gases	IP00, IP20 and IP21 drives: IEC Class C3 ANSI-ISA 71.04 Class G2 IP55 drives: IEC Class C4 ANSI-ISA 71.04 Class G3/GX up to 2300 Å/30d corrosivity	Class 1C2	Class 2C2
	Drives with +P968 corrosion resistance variant: IEC Class C5/CX ANSI-ISA 71.04 Class GX up to 8000 Å/30d corrosivity	Class 1S3	Class 2S2
	Conformal coated circuit boards as standard on all drives		
Solid particles	Class 3S2. No conductive dust allowed.	Class 1S3 if the pack- age is Class 2S2, other- wise Class 1S2	Class 2S2
Pollution degree IEC/EN 60664-1	2		
Atmospheric	70 to 106 kPa	70 to 106 kPa	60 to 106 kPa
pressure	0.7 to 1.05 atmospheres	0.7 to 1.05 atmospheres	0.6 to 1.05 atmospheres
Vibration	Max. 1 mm (0.04 in)	Max. 1 mm (0.04 in)	Max. 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
EN 60068-2-	(5 to 13.2 Hz),	(5 to 13.2 Hz),	(2 to 9 Hz),
6:2008	max. $7 \text{ m/s}^2 (23 \text{ ft/s}^2)$	max. $7 \text{ m/s}^2 (23 \text{ ft/s}^2)$	max. 15 m/s ² (49 ft/s ²)
	(13.2 to 100 Hz) sinusoidal	(13.2 to 100 Hz) sinus- oidal	(9 to 200 Hz) sinusoidal
Vibration (ISTA)	-	R1R5 (ISTA 1A): Dis- placement, 25 mm peak to peak, 14200 vibratory impacts	
		R6R9 (ISTA 3E): Random, overall Grms level of 0.54	

Shock/Drop (ISTA)	Not allowed	R1R5 (ISTA 1A): Drop, 6 faces, 3 edges and 1 corner			With packing max. 100 m/s 2 (330 ft/s 2), 11 ms
		Weight range	mm	in	
		010 kg (022 lb)	760	29.9	
		1019 kg (2242lb)	610	24.0	
		1928 kg (4262lb)	460	18.1	
		2841 kg (6290 lb)	340	13.4	
		R6R9 (IS Shock, incl 1.2 m/s (3.9	ine im	pact:	
		Shock, rota edge drop: (7.9 in)			

¹⁾ For neutral-grounded TN and TT systems and non-corner grounded IT systems.

Storage conditions

Store the drive in humidity controlled enclosed environments. Keep the drive in its package.

Colors

Drive enclosure: NCS 1502-Y (RAL 9002 / PMS 1C Cool Grey) and RAL 9017.

Materials

Drive

Refer to Recycling instructions and environmental information for ACS880-01 drives (3AUA0000149383 [English]).

Package materials for small wall-mounted drives and converter modules

Cardboard

²⁾ For corner-grounded TN, TT and IT systems.

³⁾ IP55 drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998) have different air temperature limits. Refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

⁴⁾ Contact ABB for higher humidity levels than 60% in the presence of corrosive gases.

- Molded pulp
- EPP (foam)
- PP (strapping)
- PE (plastic bag).

Package materials for large wall-mounted drives and converter modules

- · Cardboard heavy duty quality with wet strength glue
- Plywood
- Wood
- PP (strapping)
- PE (VCI foil)
- · Metal (fixing clamps, screws).

Package materials for options, accessories and spare parts

- Cardboard
- Kraft paper
- PP (straps)
- PE (film, bubble wrap)
- Plywood, wood (only for heavy components)

The materials vary according to the item type, size and shape. The typical package is a cardboard box with paper filling or bubble wrap. ESD-safe packing materials are used for printed circuit boards and similar items.

Materials of manuals

Printed product manuals are made of recyclable paper. Product manuals are available on the Internet.

Disposal

The main parts of the drive can be recycled to preserve natural resources and energy. Product parts and materials should be dismantled and separated.

Generally all metals, such as steel, aluminum, copper and its alloys, and precious metals can be recycled as material. Plastics, rubber, cardboard and other packaging material can be used in energy recovery.

Printed circuit boards and DC capacitors need selective treatment according to IEC 62635 guidelines.

To aid recycling, most plastic parts are marked with an appropriate identification code. In addition, components containing Substances of Very High Concern (SVHCs) are listed in the European Chemicals Agency SCIP database. SCIP is the database for information on Substances of Concern in articles as such or in complex objects (Products) established under the Waste Framework Directive (2008/98/EC). For more information, contact your local ABB distributor or consult the European Chemicals Agency SCIP database to find out which SVHCs are used in the drive and where the components are located.

Contact your local ABB distributor for more information on environmental aspects. End of life treatment must follow international and national regulations.

For more information on ABB end of life services, refer to new.abb.com/service/end-of-life-services.

Applicable standards

	th the following standards. The compliance with the European Lowerified according to standard EN 61800-5-1.
IEC/EN 61800-3:2004 + A1:2012	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 3: EMC requirements and specific test methods
EN 61800-5-1:2007 + A1:2017 + A11:2021 IEC 61800-5-1:2007 + Amd1:2016	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 5-1: Safety requirements – Electrical, thermal and energy
IEC 61800-5-2:2016	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 5-2: Safety
EN 61800-5-2:2007	requirements – Functional
IEC 61800-9-2:2023	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 9-2: Ecodesign for power drive systems, motor starters, power electronics and their driven applications – Energy efficiency indicators for power drive systems and motor starters
IEC 61508-1:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems - Part 1: General requirements
IEC 61508-2:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems - Part 2: Requirements for electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems
EN 62061:2005 +AC:2010 +A1:2013 + A2:2015	Safety of machinery. Functional safety of safety-related electrical, electronic and programmable electronic control systems
EN/ISO 13849-1:2015	Safety of machinery — Safety-related parts of control systems — Part 1: General principles for design
EN/ISO 13849-2:2012	Safety of machinery — Safety-related parts of control systems — Part 2: Validation

IEC 60146-1-1:2009 EN 60146-1-1:2010	Semiconductor converters – General requirements and line commutated converters – Part 1-1: Specification of basic requirements
EN 60204-1:2006 + A1 2009 + AC:2010	Safety of machinery. Electrical equipment of machines. Part 1: General requirements.
	Provisions for compliance: The final assembler of the machine is responsible for installing:
	emergency-stop devicesupply disconnecting device
EN 60529:1991 + A2:2013	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
IEC 60664-1:2007	Insulation coordination for equipment within low-voltage systems. Part 1: Principles, requirements and tests
EN 50581:2012	Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances
IEC/EN 63000:2018	Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances
UL 61800-5-1: First Edition	Standard for Safety, Adjustable Speed Electrical Power Drive Systems – Part 5-1: Safety Requirements – Electrical, Thermal and Energy
CSA C22.2 No. 274-17	Adjustable speed drives
CSA C22.2 No. 22-10	General Requirements - Canadian Electrical Code, Part II

Markings

These markings are attached to the drive:



CE mark

Product complies with the applicable European Union legislation. For fulfilling the EMC requirements, see the additional information concerning the drive EMC compliance (IEC/EN 61800-3).



TÜV Safety Approved mark (functional safety)

Product contains Safe torque off and possibly other (optional) safety functions which are certified by TÜV according to the relevant functional safety standards. Applicable to drives and inverters; not applicable to supply, brake or DC/DC converter units or modules.



UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) mark

Product complies with the applicable United Kingdom's legislation (Statutory Instruments). Marking is required for products being placed on the market in Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland).



UL Listed mark for USA and Canada

Product has been tested and evaluated against the relevant North American standards by the Underwriters Laboratories. Valid with rated voltages up to 600 V.



CSA certification mark for USA and Canada

Product has been tested and evaluated against the relevant North American standards by the CSA Group. Valid with rated voltages up to 600 V.



RCM mark

Product complies with Australian and New Zealand requirements specific to EMC, telecommunications and electrical safety. For fulfilling the EMC requirements, see the additional information concerning the drive EMC compliance (IEC/EN 61800-3).



EAC (Eurasian Conformity) mark

Product complies with the technical regulations of the Eurasian Customs Union. EAC mark is required in Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



KC mark

Product complies with Korean Registration of Broadcasting and Communications Equipment Clause 3, Article 58-2 of Radio Waves Act.



Electronic Information Products (EIP) symbol including an Environment Friendly Use Period (EFUP).

Product is compliant with the People's Republic of China Electronic Industry Standard (SJ/T 11364-2014) about hazardous substances. The EFUP is 20 years. China RoHS II Declaration of Conformity is available from https://library.abb.com.



WEEE mark

At the end of life the product should enter the recycling system at an appropriate collection point and not placed in the normal waste stream.

EMC compliance (IEC/EN 61800-3)

Definitions

EMC stands for Electromagnetic Compatibility. It is the ability of electrical/electronic equipment to operate without problems within an

electromagnetic environment. Likewise, the equipment must not disturb or interfere with any other product or system within its locality.

First environment includes establishments connected to a low-voltage network which supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

Second environment includes establishments connected to a network not supplying domestic premises.

Drive of category C1: drive of rated voltage less than 1000 V and intended for use in the first environment.

Drive of category C2: drive of rated voltage less than 1000 V and intended to be installed and started up only by a professional when used in the first environment.

Note: A professional is a person or organization having necessary skills in installing and/or starting up power drive systems, including their EMC aspects.

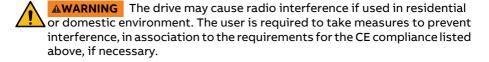
Drive of category C3: drive of rated voltage less than 1000 V and intended for use in the second environment and not intended for use in the first environment.

Drive of category C4: drive of rated voltage equal to or above 1000 V, or rated current equal to or above 400 A, or intended for use in complex systems in the second environment.

Category C2

The emission limits are complied with the following provisions:

- 1. The drive is equipped with EMC filter +E202.
- 2. The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
- 3. The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
- ${\bf 4.} \quad {\bf For \ the \ maximum \ motor \ cable \ length, see \ section \ Motor \ connection \ data}.$



Note: Note: Do not install a drive with the EMC filter +E202 connected to a system that the filter is not suitable for. This can cause danger, or damage the drive.

Note: Do not install a drive with the ground-to-phase varistor connected to a system that the varistor is not suitable for. If you do, the varistor circuit can be damaged.

If you install the drive to any other system than symmetrically grounded TN-S system, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter or the ground-to-phase varistor. See ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English]).

Category C3

The drive complies with the standard with the following provisions:

- The drive is equipped with EMC filter +E200 or +E201.
 - **Note:** With filter +E201, 230 V, 400 V and 500 V frames R1...R5 and 690 V frames R3, R5 and R6 comply with category C4 only.
- The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
- The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
- For the maximum motor cable length, see section Motor connection data.



AWARNING Drive of category C3 is not intended to be used on a low-voltage public network which supplies domestic premises. Radio frequency interference is expected if the drive is used on such a network.

Note: Do not install a drive with the EMC filter +E200 connected to a system that the filter is not suitable for. This can cause danger, or damage the drive.

Note: Do not install a drive with the ground-to-phase varistor connected to a system that the varistor is not suitable for. If you do, the varistor circuit can be damaged.

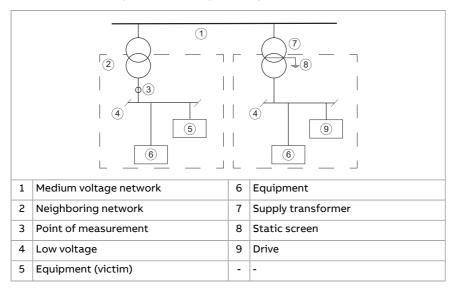
If you install the drive to any other system than symmetrically grounded TN-S system, you may need to disconnect the EMC filter or the ground-to-phase varistor. Refer to ACS880 frames R1 to R11 EMC filter and ground-to-phase varistor disconnecting instructions (3AUA0000125152 [English]).

Category C4

The drive complies with the C4 category with these provisions:

1. It is made sure that no excessive emission is propagated to neighboring low-voltage networks. In some cases, the natural suppression in transformers

and cables is sufficient. If in doubt, a supply transformer with static screening between the primary and secondary windings can be used.



- 2. An EMC plan for preventing disturbances is drawn up for the installation. A template is available in Technical guide No. 3 EMC compliant installation and configuration for a power drive system (3AFE61348280 [English]).
- The motor and control cables are selected, and routed according to the electrical planning guidelines of the drive. The EMC recommendations are obeyed.
- 4. The drive is installed according to its installation instructions. The EMC recommendations are obeyed.

NOTICE A drive of category C4 is not intended to be used on a low-voltage public network which supplies domestic premises. Radio frequency interference is expected if the drive is used on such a network.

UL checklist

Operation of this drive requires detailed installation and operation instructions provided in the hardware and software manuals. The manuals are provided in electronic format, in the drive package or on the Internet. Keep the manuals with the drive at all times. Hard copies of the manuals can be ordered through the manufacturer.

• Make sure that the drive type designation label includes the applicable marking.

- DANGER Risk of electric shock. After disconnecting the input power, always wait for 5 minutes to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge before you start working on the drive, motor or motor cable.
- The drive is to be used in a heated, indoor controlled environment. The drive
 must be installed in clean air according to the enclosure classification. Cooling
 air must be clean, free from corrosive materials and electrically conductive
 dust. The UL Type 12 enclosure provides protection from airborne dust, light
 water sprays and splashing water from all directions.
- The maximum surrounding air temperature is 40 °C at rated output current. The output current is derated for 40...55 °C.
- The drive is suitable for use in a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 kA rms symmetrical amperes, 600 V maximum when protected by the UL fuses given elsewhere in this chapter.
- The drive is suitable for use in a circuit capable of delivering not more than 65 kA rms symmetrical amperes, 600 V maximum when protected by the UL circuit breakers given elsewhere in this chapter.
- The cables located within the motor circuit must be rated for at least 75 °C in UL-compliant installations.
- The input cable must be protected with fuses or circuit breakers. These
 protective devices provide branch circuit protection in accordance with the
 national regulations (National Electrical Code (NEC) or Canadian Electrical
 Code). Obey also any other applicable local or provincial codes.
 Suitable UL fuses are listed in section Fuses (UL) (page 244) and circuit breakers
 in section Circuit breakers (UL) (page 254).



▲ WARNING The opening of the branch-circuit protective device may be an indication that a fault current has been interrupted. To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, current-carrying parts and other components of the device should be examined and replaced if damaged.

- The integral solid state short circuit protection of the drive does not provide branch circuit protection. Branch circuit protection must be provided in accordance with the National Electrical Code and any additional local codes.
- The drive provides motor overload protection. The protection is not enabled when the drive leaves the ABB factory. For enabling the protection, see the firmware manual.
- The drive overvoltage category according to IEC 60664-1 is III.
- To maintain the environment integrity of the enclosure, replace the cable grommets with field-installed industrial conduit hubs or closure plates required by the enclosure type (or better).

Approvals

The drive is marine type approved. For more information, refer to ACS880-01..., ACS880-04..., ACS880-11..., ACS880-31..., ACS880-14... and ACS880-34... +C132 marine type-approved drives supplement (3AXD50000010521 [English]).

Design lifetime expectancy

The design lifetime expectancy of the drive and its overall components exceeds ten (10) years in normal operating environments. In some cases, the drive can last 20 years or more. To achieve a long lifetime for the product the manufacturer's instructions for sizing the drive, installation, operational conditions and preventive maintenance schedule shall be followed.

Disclaimers

Generic disclaimer

The manufacturer shall have no obligation with respect to any product which (i) has been improperly repaired or altered; (ii) has been subjected to misuse, negligence or accident; (iii) has been used in a manner contrary to the manufacturer's instructions; or (iv) has failed as a result of ordinary wear and tear.

Cyber security disclaimer

This product is designed to be connected to and to communicate information and data via a network interface. It is Customer's sole responsibility to provide and continuously ensure a secure connection between the product and Customer network or any other network (as the case may be). Customer shall establish and maintain any appropriate measures (such as but not limited to the installation of firewalls, application of authentication measures, encryption of data, installation of anti-virus programs, etc.) to protect the product, the network, its system and the interface against any kind of security breaches, unauthorized access, interference, intrusion, leakage and/or theft of data or information.

ABB and its affiliates are not liable for damages and/or losses related to such security breaches, any unauthorized access, interference, intrusion, leakage and/or theft of data or information.

Declarations of conformity



Link to Declaration of conformity according to EU Machinery Directive 2006/42/EU (3AXD10000099646)



Link to Declaration of conformity according to UK Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 (3AXD10001329538)



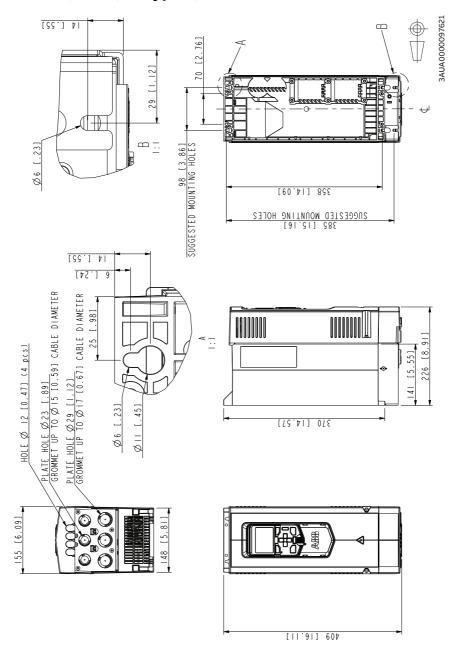
Dimension drawings

Contents of this chapter

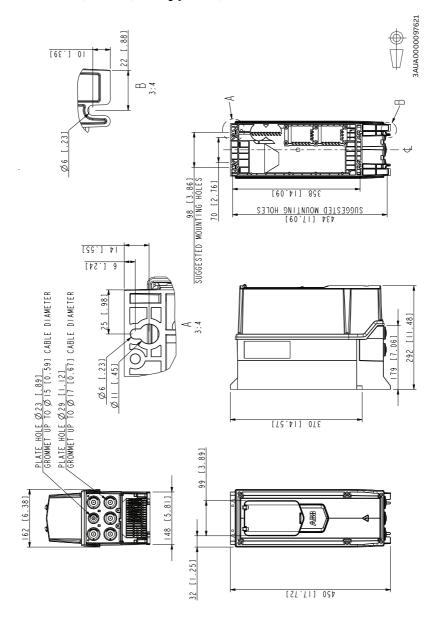
This chapter contains dimension drawings of the standard drive (IP21, UL Type 1) and drive with option +B056 (IP55, UL Type 12).

For dimension drawings with options +P940 and +P944 (IP20, UL Open Type), see ACS880...+P940 and +P944 drive modules supplement (3AUA0000145446 [English]).

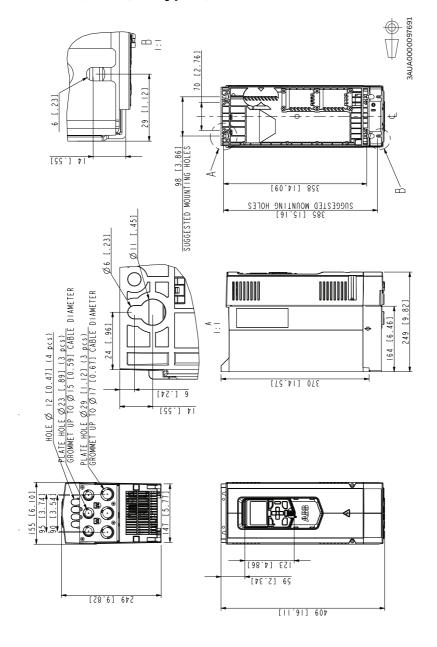
Frame R1, IP21 (UL Type 1)



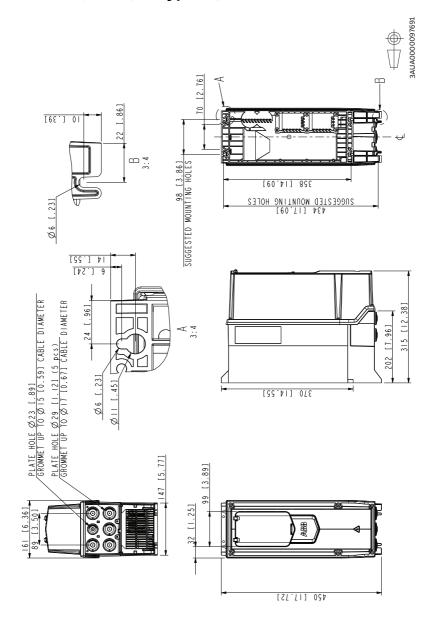
Frame R1, IP55 (UL Type 12)



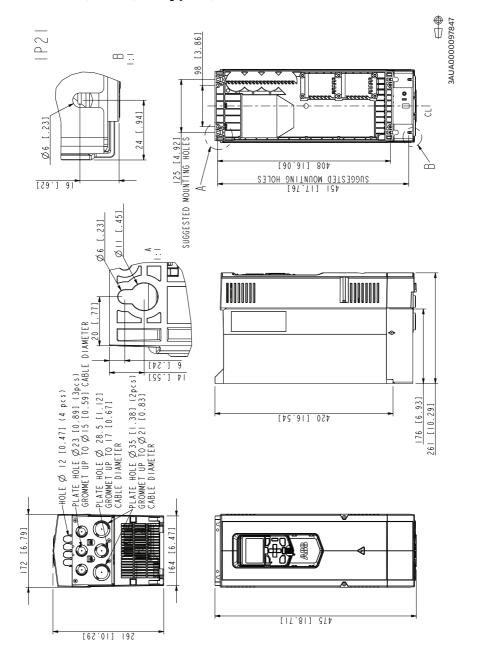
Frame R2, IP21 (UL Type 1)



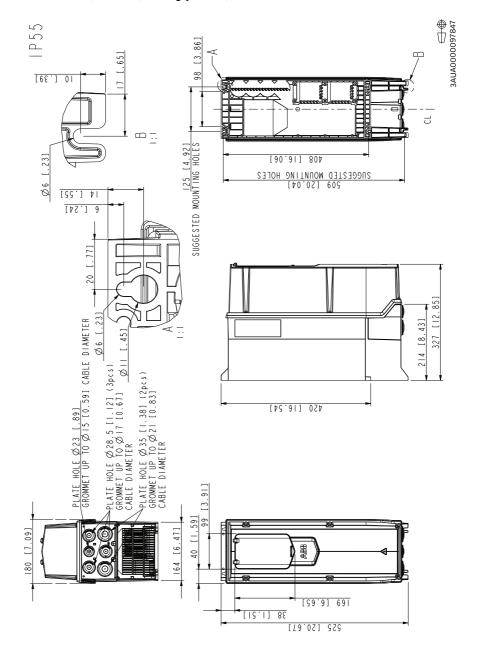
Frame R2, IP55 (UL Type 12)



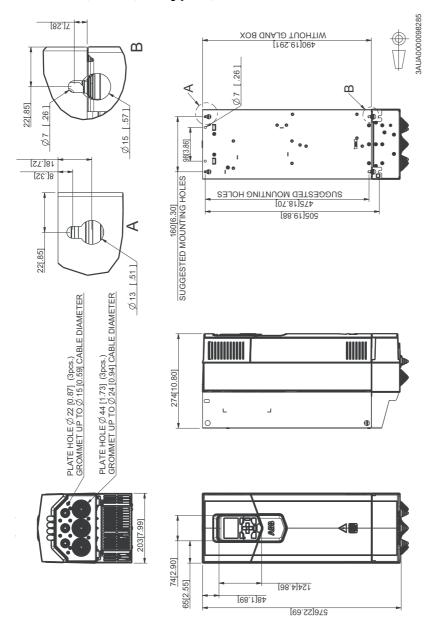
Frame R3, IP21 (UL Type 1)



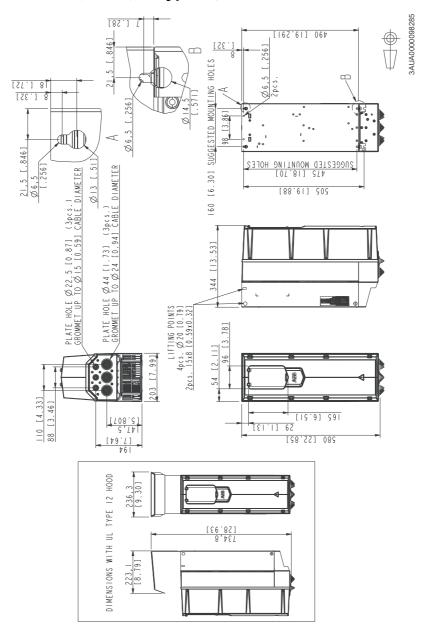
Frame R3, IP55 (UL Type 12)



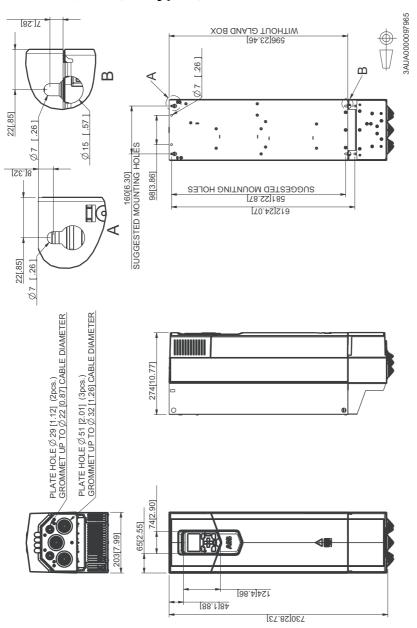
Frame R4, IP21 (UL Type 1)



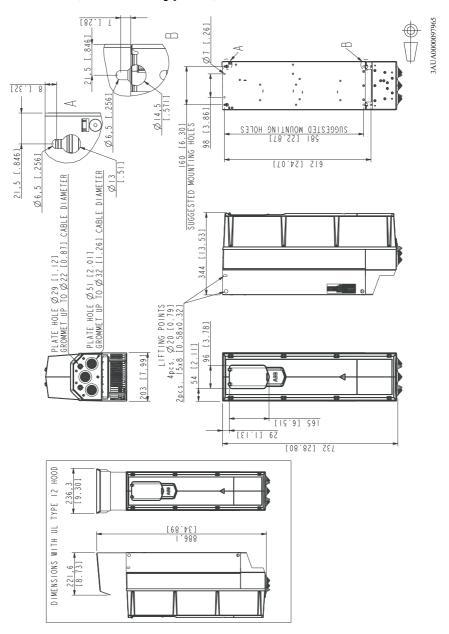
Frame R4, IP55 (UL Type 12)



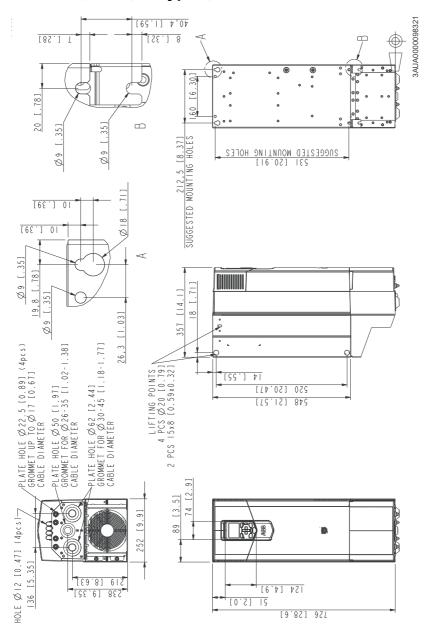
Frame R5, IP21 (UL Type 1)



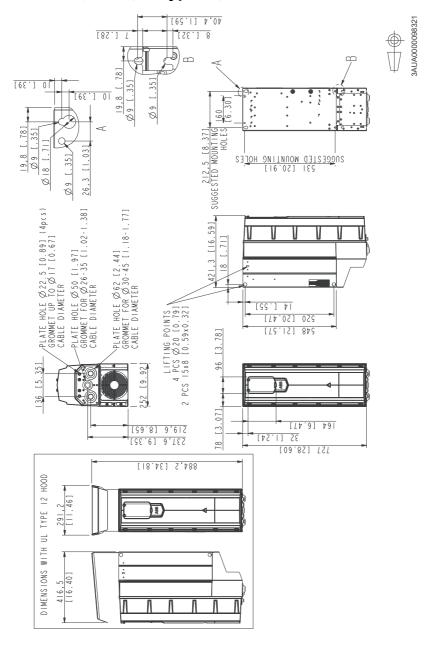
Frame R5, IP55 (UL Type 12)



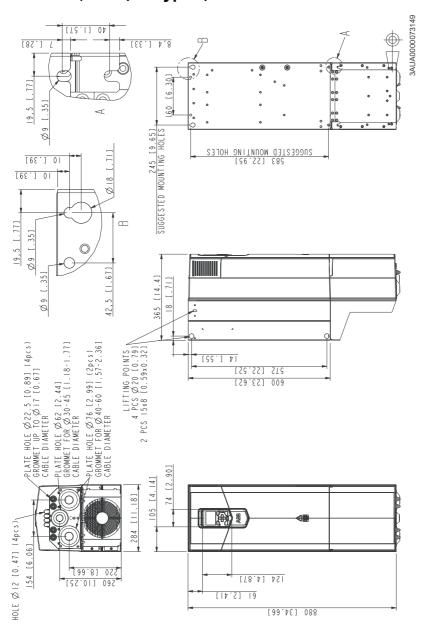
Frame R6, IP21 (UL Type 1)



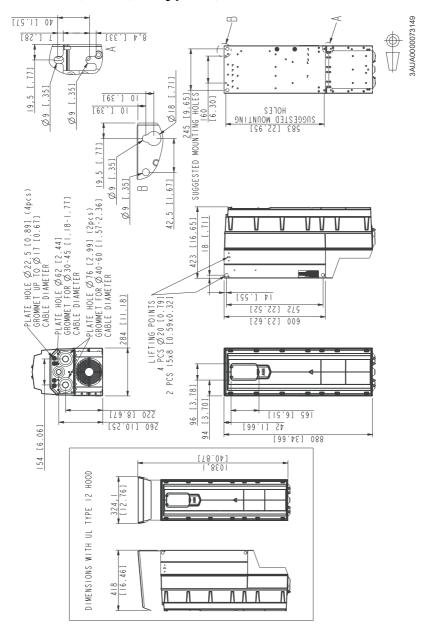
Frame R6, IP55 (UL Type 12)



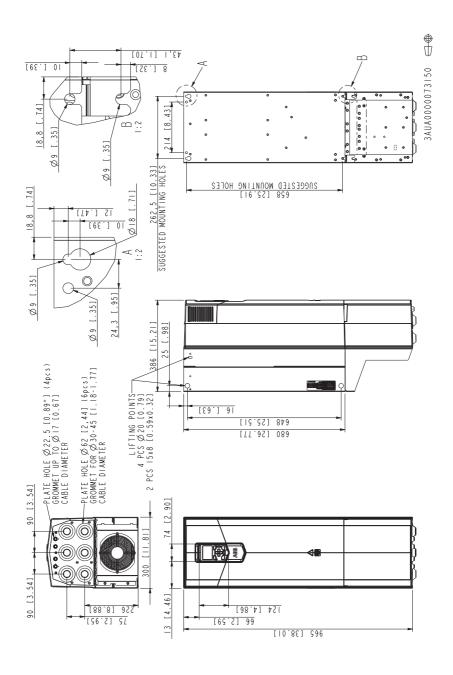
Frame R7, IP21 (UL Type 1)



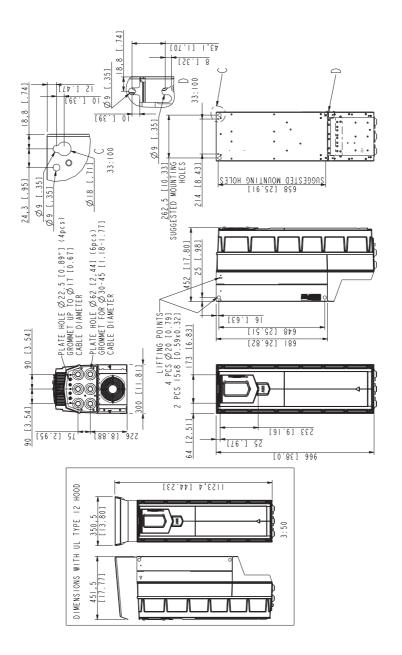
Frame R7, IP55 (UL Type 12)



Frame R8, IP21 (UL Type 1)

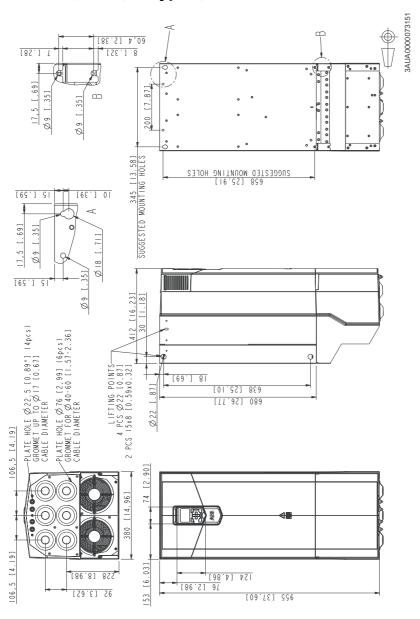


Frame R8, IP55 (UL Type 12)

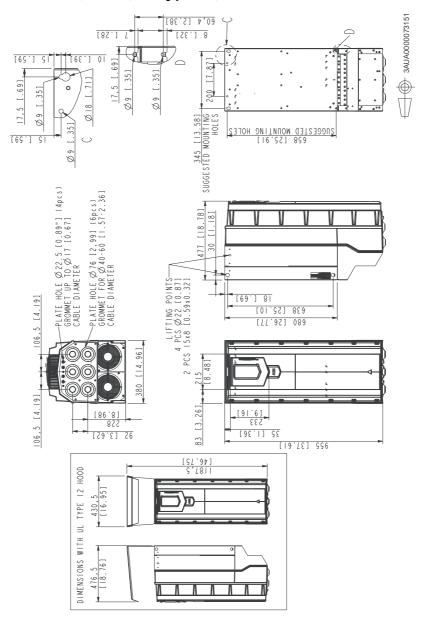


3AUA0000073150

Frame R9, IP21 (UL Type 1)

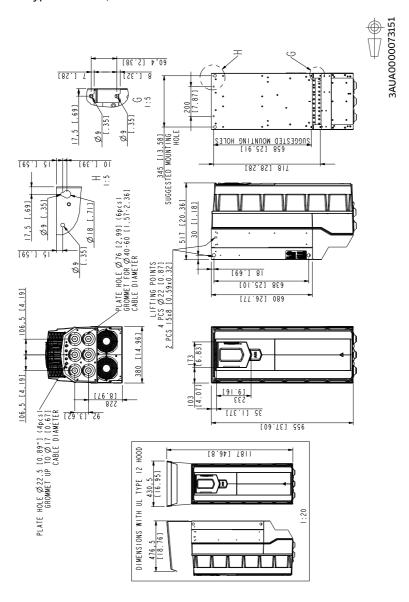


Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)



Frame R9, IP55 (UL Type 12)*

*drive types -453A-4, -490A-3 and -477A-5



Resistor braking

Contents of this chapter

This chapter contains information and instructions on resistor braking, brake choppers and brake resistors.

Operation principle and hardware description

Frames R1 to R4 have a built-in brake chopper as standard. Frames R5 and up can be equipped with optional built-in brake chopper (+D150). Brake resistors are available as add-on kits.

The brake chopper handles the extra energy generated by motor during a quick deceleration. The extra energy increases the drive DC link voltage. The chopper connects the brake resistor to the DC link whenever the voltage is higher than the operation limit of the chopper. Energy consumption by the resistor losses lowers the voltage until it is below the limit at which the chopper stops.

Planning the braking system

Selecting the brake circuit components

- 1. Calculate the maximum power generated by the motor during braking ($P_{
 m max}$).
- Select a suitable drive, brake chopper and brake resistor combination for the application from the rating table in this chapter. The braking power of the chopper must be greater or equal than the maximum power generated by the motor during the braking.
- 3. Check the resistor selection. The energy generated by the motor during a 400-second period must not exceed the resistor heat dissipation capacity $E_{\rm R}$.

Note: If the $E_{\rm R}$ value is not sufficient, it is possible to use a four-resistor assembly in which two standard resistors are connected in parallel, two in series. The $E_{\rm R}$ value of the four-resistor assembly is four times the value specified for the standard resistor.

Selecting a custom resistor

If you use a resistor other than the default resistor,

1. make sure that the resistance of the custom resistor is greater or equal than the resistance of the default resistor in the rating table:

R≥R _{mi}	$R \ge R_{\min}$					
R	Resistance of the custom resistor AWARNING Never use a brake resistor with a resistance smaller than R_{\min} . The drive and the chopper are not able to handle the overcurrent caused by the low resistance.					
R _{min}	Resistance of the default resistor					

2. make sure that the load capacity of the custom resistor is greater than the instantaneous maximum power consumption of the resistor when it is connected to the drive DC link voltage by the chopper:

$P_{\rm r} < (U_{\rm DC}^2)/R$								
P _r	Load capacity of the custom resistor AWARNING Never use a brake resistor with a resistance smaller than R_{\min} . The drive and the chopper are not able to handle the overcurrent caused by the low resistance.							
U _{DC}	Drive DC link voltage during braking Supply voltage range (V AC) 208240 380415 440480 500 525600 660690							
	Drive DC link voltage during braking (V DC) when internal brake chopper at 100% pulse width	403	697	806	806	1008	1159	
	See ACS880 primary co [English]) for more info		-	mware m	nanual (3	AUA0000	085967	

R	Resistance of the custom resistor	
---	-----------------------------------	--

Selecting and routing the brake resistor cables

Use the same cable type for the resistor cabling as for the drive input cabling to ensure that the input fuses also protect the resistor cable. Alternatively, a two conductor shielded cable with the same cross-sectional area can be used.

Minimizing electromagnetic interference

Follow these rules in order to minimize electromagnetic interference caused by the rapid current changes in the resistor cables:

- Shield the braking power line completely, either by using shielded cable or a
 metallic enclosure. Unshielded single-core cable can only be used if it is routed
 inside a cabinet that efficiently suppresses the radiated emissions.
- · Install the cables away from other cable routes.
- Avoid long parallel runs with other cables. The minimum parallel cabling separation distance should be 0.3 meters.
- · Cross the other cables at right angles.
- Keep the cable as short as possible in order to minimize the radiated emissions and stress on chopper IGBTs. The longer the cable the higher the radiated emissions, inductive load and voltage peaks over the IGBT semiconductors of the brake chopper.

Maximum cable length

The maximum length of the resistor cable(s) is 10 m (33 ft).

EMC compliance of the complete installation

ABB has not verified that the EMC requirements are fulfilled with external user-defined brake resistors and cabling. The EMC compliance of the complete installation must be considered by the customer.

Placing the brake resistors

Install the resistors outside the drive in a place where they will cool.

Arrange the cooling of the resistor in a way that:

- no danger of overheating is caused to the resistor or nearby materials
- the temperature of the room the resistor is located in does not exceed the allowed maximum.

Supply the resistor with cooling air/water according to the resistor manufacturer's instructions.



AWARNING The materials near the brake resistor must be non-flammable. The surface temperature of the resistor is high. Air flowing from the resistor is of hundreds of degrees Celsius. If the exhaust vents are connected to a ventilation system, ensure that the material withstands high temperatures. Protect the resistor against contact.

Protecting the system against thermal overload

The brake chopper protects itself and the resistor cables against thermal overload when the cables are dimensioned according to the nominal current of the drive. The drive control program includes a resistor and resistor cable thermal protection function which can be tuned by the user. See the firmware manual.

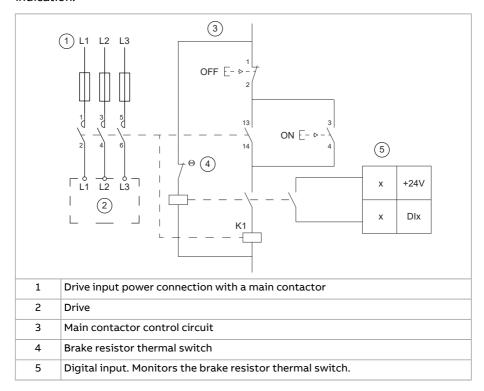
Protecting the system in fault situations

Frames R1 to R4

The drive has a brake thermal model which protects the brake resistor against overload. ABB recommends to enable the thermal model at start up.

ABB recommends to equip the drive with a main contactor for safety reasons even when you have enabled the resistor thermal model. Wire the contactor so that it opens in case the resistor overheats. This is essential for safety since the drive will not otherwise be able to interrupt the main supply if the chopper remains conductive in a fault situation. An example wiring diagram is shown below. ABB recommends that you use resistors equipped with a thermal switch (1) inside the resistor assembly. The switch indicates overtemperature.

ABB recommends that you also wire the thermal switch to a digital input of the drive, and configure the input to cause a fault trip at resistor overtemperature indication.

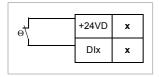


Frames R5 to R9

A main contactor is not required for protecting against resistor overheating when the resistor is dimensioned according to the instructions and the internal brake chopper is in use. The drive will disable power flow through the input bridge if the chopper remains conductive in a fault situation but the charging resistor may fail.

Note: If an external brake chopper (outside the drive module) is used, a main contactor is always required.

A thermal switch (standard in ABB resistors) is required for safety reasons. The thermal switch cable must be shielded and may not be longer than the resistor cable. Wire the switch to a digital input on the drive control unit as shown in the figure below.



Protecting the resistor cable against short-circuits

The input fuses will also protect the resistor cable when it is identical with the input cable.

Mechanical installation

Brake resistors must be installed outside the drive. Obey the resistor manufacturer's instructions.

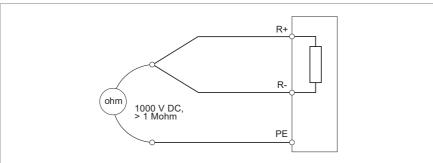
Electrical installation

Measuring the insulation resistance of the brake resistor circuit



AWARNING Obey the safety instructions of the drive. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur. If you are not a qualified electrical professional, do not do electrical installation, commissioning or maintenance work.

- Stop the drive and do the steps in section Electrical safety precautions (page 18) before you start the work.
- 2. Make sure that the resistor cable is connected to the resistor and disconnected from the drive output terminals.
- 3. At the drive end, connect the R+ and R- conductors of the resistor cable together. Measure the insulation resistance between the conductors and the PE conductor with a measuring voltage of 1000 V DC. The insulation resistance must be more than 1 Mohm.



Connection diagram

See section Connection diagram (page 106).

Connection procedure

- Connect the resistor cables to the R+ and R- terminals in the same way as the
 other power cables. If a shielded three-conductor cable is used, cut the third
 conductor, insulate it, and ground the twisted shield of the cable (protective
 earth conductor of the resistor assembly) at both ends.
- Connect the thermal switch of the brake resistor as described above in section Frames R1 to R4 (page 314) or Frames R5 to R9 (page 315).

Start-up



ACAUTION Make sure that there is sufficient ventilation. New brake resistors can have a protective grease coating. When the resistor warms up for the first time, the grease burns off and can produce some smoke.

Set the following parameters (ACS880 primary control program):

- Set parameter 30.30 Overvoltage control to disable.
- Set parameter 31.01 External event 1 source to point to the digital input where the thermal switch of the brake resistor is wired.
- Set parameter 31.02 External event 1 type to Fault.
- Set parameter 43.06 Brake chopper function to Enable. If you select Enabled with thermal model, set also the brake resistor overload protection parameters 43.08 and 43.09 according to the application.
- For frames R5 to R9: Set parameter 43.07 Brake chopper run enable to Other [bit] and select from parameter 10.01 DI status the digital input where the thermal switch of the brake resistor is wired.
- Check the resistance value of parameter 43.10 Brake resistance.

With these parameter settings, the drive stops by coasting on brake resistor overtemperature.

NOTICE If you disable the brake chopper by parameter, also disconnect the brake resistor cable from the drive. Otherwise, there is a risk of resistor overheating and damage.

For settings of other control programs, refer to the firmware manual.

Technical data

Ratings

ACS880- 01	Interna chor	l brake oper	Example brake r	esistor(s)		
	P _{brcont}	R _{min}	Туре	R	E _R	P _{Rcont}
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW
U _n = 230	٧					
04A6-2	0.75	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
06A6-2	1.1	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
07A5-2	1.5	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
10A6-2	2.2	65	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
16A8-2	4.0	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
24A3-2	5.5	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2
031A-2	7.5	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
046A-2	11	12	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
061A-2	11	12	SACE15RE13	13	435	2
075A-2	18.5	6	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
087A-2	22	6	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5
115A-2	30	3.5	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
145A-2	37	3.5	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
170A-2	45	2.4	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
206A-2	55	2.4	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
274A-2	75	1.8	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5
U _n = 400) V					
02A4-3	0.75	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
03A3-3	1.1	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
04A0-3	1.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
05A6-3	2.2	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
07A2-3	3.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
09A4-3	4.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
12A6-3	5.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14
017A-3	7.5	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1

ACS880- 01								
	P _{brcont}	R _{min}	Туре	R	E _R	P _{Rcont}		
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW		
025A-3	11	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1		
032A-3	15	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2		
038A-3	18.5	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2		
045A-3	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2		
061A-3	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2		
072A-3	37	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5		
087A-3	45	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5		
105A-3	55	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6		
145A-3	75	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6		
169A-3	90	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9		
206A-3	110	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9		
246A-3	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5		
293A-3	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5		
363A-3	160	2.0	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5		
430A-3	160	2.0	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5		
490A-3	200	1.5	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5		
U _n = 500) V				'			
02A1-5	0.75	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
03A0-5	1.1	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
03A4-5	1.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
04A8-5	2.2	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
05A2-5	3.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
07A6-5	4.0	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
11A0-5	5.5	78	JBR-03	80	40	0.14		
014A-5	7.5	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1		
021A-5	11	39	SACE08RE44	44	210	1		
027A-5	15	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2		
034A-5	18.5	19	SACE15RE22	22	420	2		
040A-5	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2		

ACS880- 01	Interna chop	l brake oper	Example brake resistor(s)				
	P _{brcont}	R _{min}	Туре	R	E _R	P _{Rcont}	
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW	
052A-5	22	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2	
065A-5	37	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5	
077A-5	45	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5	
096A-5	55	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6	
124A-5	75	5.4	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6	
156A-5	90	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9	
180A-5	110	3.3	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9	
240A-5	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5	
260A-5	132	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5	
302A-5	160	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5	
361A-5	160	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5	
414A-5	160	2.3	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5	
477A-5	200	1.5	SAFUR200F500	2.7	5400	13.5	
U _n = 690	V						
07A4-7	5.5	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1	
09A9-7	7.5	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1	
14A3-7	11.0	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1	
019A-7	15.0	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1	
023A-7	18.5	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1	
027A-7	22.0	44	SACE08RE44	44	210	1	
035A-7	33	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2	
042A-7	45	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2	
049A-7	45	18	SACE15RE22	22	420	2	
061A-7	55	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2	
084A-7	65	13	SACE15RE13	13	435	2	
098A-7	90	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5	
119A-7	110	8	SAFUR90F575	8	1800	4.5	
142A-7	132	6	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6	
174A-7	160	6	SAFUR80F500	6	2400	6	

ACS880- 01	Internal brake chopper					
	P _{brcont}	R _{min}	Туре	R	E _R	P _{Rcont}
	kW	ohm		ohm	kJ	kW
210A-7	200	4	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9
271A-7	200	4	SAFUR125F500	4	3600	9

Note: The insulation resistance of SACE and SAFUR resistors is 2 kV/min. The insulation resistance of JBR resistors is 3.5 kV/min.

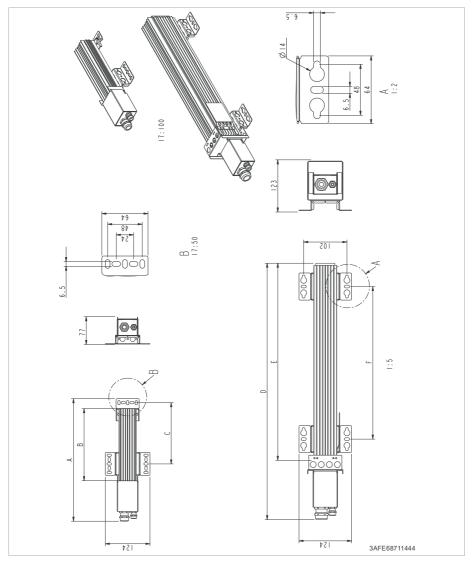
 $\begin{array}{ll} P_{\rm brcont} & {\rm Maximum\,continuous\,braking\,power.\,The\,braking\,is\,considered\,continuous\,if\,the} \\ R_{\rm min} & {\rm Minimum\,allowed\,resistance\,value\,of\,the\,brake\,resistor} \\ R & {\rm Resistance\,value\,for\,the\,listed\,resistor\,assembly} \\ E_{\rm R} & {\rm Short\,energy\,pulse\,that\,the\,resistor\,assembly\,withstands\,every\,400\,seconds} \\ P_{\rm Rcont} & {\rm Continuous\,power\,(heat)\,dissipation\,of\,the\,resistor\,when\,placed\,correctly} \end{array}$

Degree of protection and thermal constant of the resistor

Resistor type	Degree of protection	Thermal constant (s)
JBR-03	IP20	
SACE	IP21	200
SAFUR	IP00	555

Dimensions and weights of external resistors

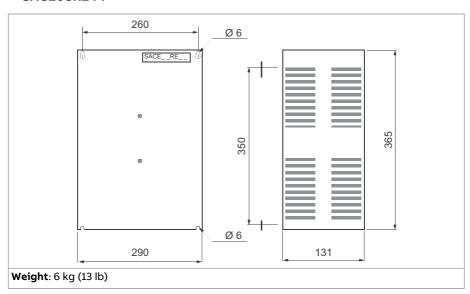
■ JBR-03



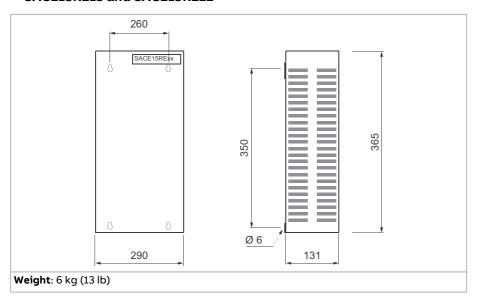
JBR-03 brake resistor		
Dimension A	340 mm (13.39 in)	

JBR-03 brake resistor					
Dimension B	200 mm (7.87 in)				
Dimension C	170 mm (6.69 in)				
Weight	0.8 kg (1.8 lb)				
Maximum wire size of main terminals	10 mm ² (AWG6)				
Tightening torque of main terminals	1.5 1.8 N·m (13 16 lbf·in)				
Wire size of thermal switch terminals	4 mm ² (AWG12)				
Tightening torque of thermal switch terminals	0.6 0.8 N·m (5.3 7.1 lbf·in)				

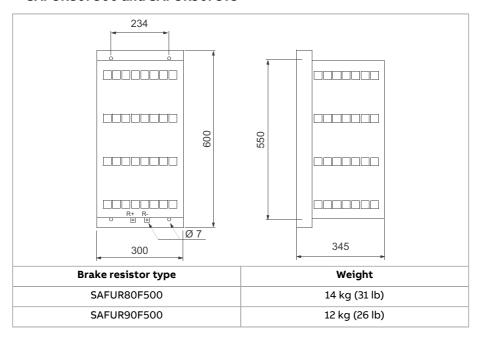
SACE08RE44



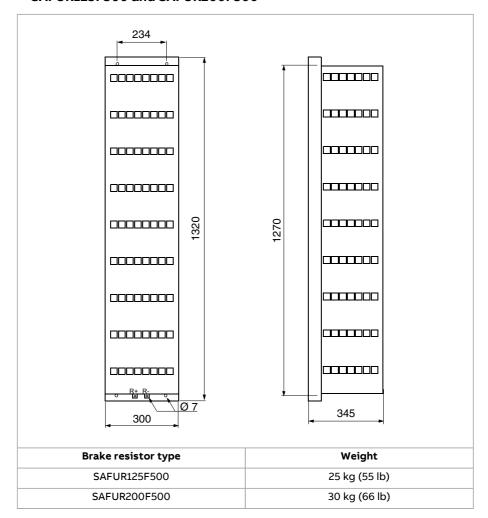
■ SACE15RE13 and SACE15RE22



■ SAFUR80F500 and SAFUR90F575



SAFUR125F500 and SAFUR200F500





The Safe torque off function

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes the Safe torque off (STO) function of the drive and gives instructions for its use.

Description



AWARNING In case of parallel-connected drives or dual-winding motors, the STO must be activated on each drive to remove the torque from the motor.

The Safe torque off function can be used, for example, as the final actuator device of safety circuits (such as an emergency stop circuit) that stop the drive in case of danger. Another typical application is a prevention of unexpected start-up function that enables short-time maintenance operations like cleaning or work on non-electrical parts of the machinery without switching off the power supply to the drive.

When activated, the Safe torque off function disables the control voltage for the power semiconductors of the drive output stage, thus preventing the drive from generating the torque required to rotate the motor. If the motor is running when Safe torque off is activated, it coasts to a stop.

The Safe torque off function has a redundant architecture, that is, both channels must be used in the safety function implementation. The safety data given in this manual is calculated for redundant use, and does not apply if both channels are not used.

The Safe torque off function complies with these standards:

Standard	Name
IEC 60204-1:2021 EN 60204-1:2018	Safety of machinery – Electrical equipment of machines – Part 1: General requirements
IEC 61000-6-7:2014	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-7: Generic standards – Immunity requirements for equipment intended to perform functions in a safety-related system (functional safety) in industrial locations
IEC 61326-3-1:2017	Electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use – EMC requirements – Part 3-1: Immunity requirements for safety-related systems and for equipment intended to perform safety-related functions (functional safety) – General industrial applications
IEC 61508-1:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems – Part 1: General requirements
IEC 61508-2:2010	Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems – Part 2: Requirements for electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-related systems
IEC 61511-1:2017	Functional safety – Safety instrumented systems for the process industry sector
IEC 61800-5-2:2016 EN 61800-5-2:2007	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 5-2: Safety requirements – Functional
EN IEC 62061:2021	Safety of machinery – Functional safety of safety-related control systems
EN ISO 13849-1:2015	Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 1: General principles for design
EN ISO 13849-2:2012	Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 2: Validation

The function also corresponds to Prevention of unexpected start-up as specified by EN ISO 14118:2018 (ISO 14118:2017), and Uncontrolled stop (stop category 0) as specified in EN/IEC 60204-1.

■ Compliance with the European Machinery Directive and the UK Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations

Refer to the technical data.

Wiring

The connection diagrams in this section are applicable to drives with ZCU control unit. For the connection diagrams of the UCU-20 control unit (option +V998), refer to UCU-20 control unit hardware manual (3AXD50001079246 [English]).

For the electrical specifications of the STO connection, see the technical data of the control unit.

Activation switch

In the wiring diagrams, the activation switch has the designation [K]. This represents a component such as a manually operated switch, an emergency stop push button switch, or the contacts of a safety relay or safety PLC.

- In case a manually operated activation switch is used, the switch must be of a type that can be locked out to the open position.
- The contacts of the switch or relay must open/close within 200 ms of each other.
- <u>Drives with ZCU control unit</u>: An FSO, FSPS, FSCS, or FPTC module can also be used. For more information, see the module documentation.
- <u>Drives with UCU-20 control unit</u>: An FSPS module can also be used. For more information, see the module documentation.

Cable types and lengths

- ABB recommends double-shielded twisted-pair cable.
- Maximum cable lengths:
 - 300 m (1000 ft) between activation switch [K] and drive control unit
 - 60 m (200 ft) between multiple drives
 - 60 m (200 ft) between external power supply and first control unit

Note: A short-circuit in the wiring between the switch and an STO terminal causes a dangerous fault. Therefore, it is recommended to use a safety relay (including wiring diagnostics) or a wiring method (shield grounding, channel separation) which reduces or eliminates the risk caused by the short-circuit.

Note: The voltage at the STO input terminals of the control unit must be at least 17 V DC for ZCU-12 control unit and 15 V DC for UCU-20 control unit to be interpreted as "1".

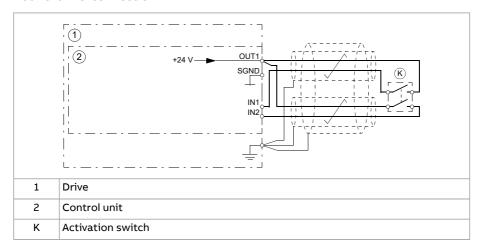
The pulse tolerance of the input channels is 1 ms.

Grounding of protective shields

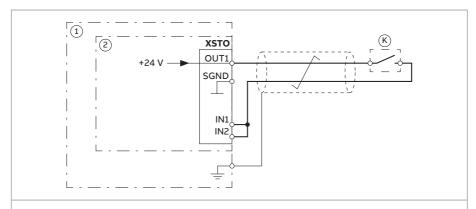
- Ground the shield in the cabling between the activation switch and the control unit at the control unit only.
- Ground the shield in the cabling between two control units at one control unit only.

Single drive (internal power supply)

Dual-channel connection



Single-channel connection



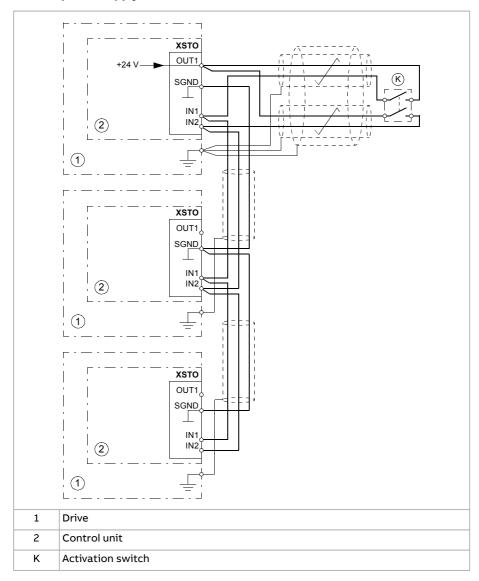
Note:

- Both STO inputs (IN1, IN2) must be connected to the activation switch. Otherwise, no SIL/PL classification is given.
- Pay special attention to avoiding any potential failure modes for the wiring. For example, use shielded cable. For measures for fault exclusion of wiring, see eg. EN ISO 13849-2:2012, table D.4.

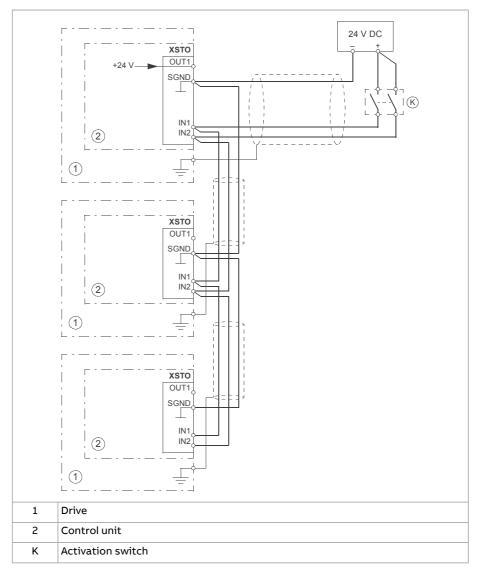
1	Drive	
2	Control unit	
K	Activation switch	
	Note: A single-channel activation switch can limit the SIL/PL capability of the safety function to a lower level than the SIL/PL capability of the STO function of the drive.	

Multiple drives

Internal power supply



External power supply



Operation principle

- 1. The Safe torque off activates (the activation switch is opened, or safety PLC logic output value is 0, or safety relay contacts open).
- 2. The STO inputs of the drive control unit de-energize.
- 3. The control unit cuts off the control voltage from the output IGBTs.
- 4. The control program generates an indication as defined by parameter 31.22 (refer the firmware manual of the drive).

The parameter selects which indications are given when one or both STO signals are switched off or lost. The indications also depend on whether the drive is running or stopped when this occurs.

Note: This parameter does not affect the operation of the STO function itself. The STO function will operate regardless of the setting of this parameter: a running drive will stop upon removal of one or both STO signals, and will not start until both STO signals are restored and all faults reset.

Note: The loss of only one STO signal always generates a fault as it is interpreted as a malfunction of STO hardware or wiring.

5. The motor coasts to a stop (if running). The drive cannot restart while the activation switch or safety relay contacts are open. After the contacts close, a reset may be needed (depending on the setting of parameter 31.22). A new start command is required to start the drive.

Start-up including validation test

To ensure the safe operation of a safety function, validation is required. The final assembler of the machine must validate the function by performing a validation test. The test must be performed

- 1. at initial start-up of the safety function
- 2. after any changes related to the safety function (circuit boards, wiring, components, settings, replacement of inverter module, etc.)
- 3. after any maintenance work related to the safety function
- 4. after a drive firmware update
- 5. at the proof test of the safety function.

Competence

The validation test of the safety function must be carried out by a competent person with adequate expertise and knowledge of the safety function as well as functional safety, as required by IEC 61508-1 clause 6. The test procedures and report must be documented and signed by this person.

Validation test reports

Signed validation test reports must be stored in the logbook of the machine. The report shall include documentation of start-up activities and test results, references to failure reports and resolution of failures. Any new validation tests performed due to changes or maintenance shall be logged into the logbook.

Validation test procedure

After wiring the Safe torque off function, validate its operation as follows.

Note: If the drive is equipped with safety option +Q972, +Q973 or +Q982, also do the procedure shown in the FSO module documentation.

If an FSCS-21 or FSPS-21 module is installed, refer to its documentation.

Action	
▲ WARNING Obey the safety instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.	
Make sure that the motor can be run and stopped freely during start-up.	
Stop the drive (if running), switch the input power off and isolate the drive from the power line using a disconnector.	
Check the STO circuit connections against the wiring diagram.	

Close the disconnector and switch the power on. Test the operation of the STO function when the motor is stopped. Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Close the STO circuit. Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Test the operation of the STO function when the motor is running. Start the drive and make sure the motor is running. Open the STO circuit. The motor should stop. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'running' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). Reset any active faults and try to start the drive. Make sure that the motor stays at a standstill and the drive operates as described above in testing the operation when the motor is stopped. Close the STO circuit. Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Test the operation of the failure detection of the drive. The motor can be stopped or running. Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FAB1 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a start command to verify that the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FAB2 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's	Action	
 Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Close the STO circuit. Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Test the operation of the STO function when the motor is running. Start the drive and make sure the motor is running. Open the STO circuit. The motor should stop. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'running' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). Reset any active faults and try to start the drive. Make sure that the motor stays at a standstill and the drive operates as described above in testing the operation when the motor is stopped. Close the STO circuit. Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Test the operation of the failure detection of the drive. The motor can be stopped or running. Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Give a start command to verify that the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop.	Close the disconnector and switch the power on.	
 Start the drive and make sure the motor is running. Open the STO circuit. The motor should stop. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'running' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). Reset any active faults and try to start the drive. Make sure that the motor stays at a standstill and the drive operates as described above in testing the operation when the motor is stopped. Close the STO circuit. Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Test the operation of the failure detection of the drive. The motor can be stopped or running. Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Open the 2nd input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. 	 Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Close the STO circuit. 	
 Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Open the 2nd input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. 	 Start the drive and make sure the motor is running. Open the STO circuit. The motor should stop. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'running' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). Reset any active faults and try to start the drive. Make sure that the motor stays at a standstill and the drive operates as described above in testing the operation when the motor is stopped. Close the STO circuit. 	
	 Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. Open the 2nd input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (refer the firmware manual). Give a start command to verify that the STO function blocks the drive's operation. The motor should not start. Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). 	
	Document and sign the validation test report which verifies that the safety function	

Use

- Open the activation switch, or activate the safety functionality that is wired to the STO connection.
- 2. The STO inputs on the drive control unit de-energize, and the control unit cuts off the control voltage from the output IGBTs.
- 3. The control program generates an indication as defined by parameter 31.22 (refer the firmware manual of the drive).
- 4. The motor coasts to a stop (if running). The drive will not restart while the activation switch or safety relay contacts are open.
- 5. Deactivate the STO by closing the activation switch, or resetting the safety functionality that is wired to the STO connection.
- 6. Reset any faults before restarting.



AWARNING The Safe torque off function does not disconnect the voltage of the main and auxiliary circuits from the drive. Therefore maintenance work on electrical parts of the drive or the motor can only be carried out after isolating the drive from the supply and all other voltage sources.



AWARNING The drive cannot detect or memorize any changes in the STO circuitry when the drive control unit is not powered or when the main power to the drive is off. If both STO circuits are closed and a level-type start signal is active when the power is restored, it is possible that the drive starts without a fresh start command. Take this into account in the risk assessment of the system.



WARNING Permanent magnet or synchronous reluctance [SynRM] motors only:

In case of a multiple IGBT power semiconductor failure, the drive can produce an alignment torque which maximally rotates the motor shaft by 180/p degrees (with permanent magnet motors) or 180/2p degrees (with synchronous reluctance [SynRM] motors) regardless of the activation of the Safe torque off function. p denotes the number of pole pairs.

Notes:

- If a running drive is stopped by using the Safe torque off function, the drive
 will cut off the motor supply voltage and the motor will coast to a stop. If this
 causes danger or is not otherwise acceptable, stop the drive and machinery
 using the appropriate stop mode before activating the Safe torque off function.
- The Safe torque off function overrides all other functions of the drive.

- The Safe torque off function is ineffective against deliberate sabotage or misuse.
- The Safe torque off function has been designed to reduce the recognized hazardous conditions. In spite of this, it is not always possible to eliminate all potential hazards. The assembler of the machine must inform the final user about the residual risks.

Maintenance

After the operation of the circuit is validated at start-up, the STO function shall be maintained by periodic proof testing. In high demand mode of operation, the maximum proof test interval is 20 years. In low demand mode of operation, the maximum proof test interval is 10 years; refer section Safety data (page 343).

There are two alternative procedures for proof testing:

- Perfect proof testing. It is assumed that all dangerous failures of the STO circuit are detected during the test. PFD_{avg} values for STO with the perfect proof testing procedure are given in the safety data section.
- Simplified proof testing. This procedure is faster and simpler than perfect proof testing. Not all dangerous failures of the STO circuit are detected during the test. The PFD_{avg} value for STO with the simplified proof testing procedure is given in the safety data section.

Note: The proof testing procedures are only valid for proof testing (periodic test, item 5 under section Start-up including validation test) but not for re-validation after changes made in the circuit. Re-validation (items 1...4 under Start-up including validation test) must be done according to the initial validation procedure.

Note: Refer also the Recommendation of Use CNB/M/11.050 (published by the European co-ordination of Notified Bodies) concerning dual-channel safety-related systems with electromechanical outputs:

- When the safety integrity requirement for the safety function is SIL 3 or PL e (cat. 3 or 4), the proof test for the function must be performed at least every month.
- When the safety integrity requirement for the safety function is SIL 2 (HFT =
 1) or PL d (cat. 3), the proof test for the function must be performed at least
 every 12 months.

The STO function of the drive does not contain any electromechanical components.

In addition to proof testing, it is a good practice to check the operation of the function when other maintenance procedures are carried out on the machinery.

Include the Safe torque off operation test described above in the routine maintenance program of the machinery that the drive runs.

If any wiring or component change is needed after start-up, or the parameters are restored, do the test given in section Validation test procedure (page 335).

Use only spare parts approved by ABB.

Record all maintenance and proof test activities in the machine logbook.

Competence

The maintenance and proof test activities of the safety function must be carried out by a competent person with adequate expertise and knowledge of the safety function as well as functional safety, as required by IEC 61508-1 clause 6.

Perfect proof test procedure

Action	\checkmark
Obey the safety instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.	
Test the operation of the STO function. If the motor is running, it will stop during the test.	
 Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows: 	
 Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). Close the STO circuit. Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. 	
Test the operation of the failure detection of the drive. The motor can be stopped or running.	
 Open the 1st input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA81 fault indication (see the firmware manual). Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Open the 2nd input channel of the STO circuit. If the motor was running, it should 	
 coast to a stop. The drive generates an FA82 fault indication (see the firmware manual). Open the STO circuit (both channels). Give a reset command. Close the STO circuit (both channels). Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally. 	
Document and sign the test report to verify that the safety function has been tested according to the procedure.	

Simplified proof test procedure

Action	
▲ WARNING Obey the safety instructions. If you ignore them, injury or death, or damage to the equipment can occur.	
Test the operation of the STO function. If the motor is running, it will stop during the test.	
Give a stop command for the drive (if running) and wait until the motor shaft is at a standstill. Make sure that the drive operates as follows:	
 Open the STO circuit. The drive generates an indication if one is defined for the 'stopped' state in parameter 31.22 (see the firmware manual). Close the STO circuit. 	
Reset any active faults. Restart the drive and check that the motor runs normally.	
Document and sign the test report to verify that the safety function has been tested according to the procedure.	

Fault tracing

The indications given during the normal operation of the Safe torque off function are selected by drive control program parameter 31.22.

The diagnostics of the Safe torque off function cross-compare the status of the two STO channels. In case the channels are not in the same state, a fault reaction function is performed and the drive trips on an FA81 or FA82 fault. An attempt to use the STO in a non-redundant manner, for example activating only one channel, will trigger the same reaction.

Refer the firmware manual of the drive control program for the indications generated by the drive, and for details on directing fault and warning indications to an output on the control unit for external diagnostics.

Any failures of the Safe torque off function must be reported to ABB.

Safety data

The safety data for the Safe torque off function is given by	oelow.
--	--------

Note: The safety data is calculated for redundant use, and applies only if both STO channels are used.

				H		PFD _{avg}											
Frame SIL SC PL size	SIL	SC	4	$(7_1 = 20$	Perfect p	roof test	Perfect proof test proof test	MTTF _D	DC SFF (%) (%)		Cat.	Ħ	CCF	٦ (ھ	Cat. HFT CCF T_M PFH diag $\lambda_{\text{Diag_s}}$ (1/h)		λ _{Diag_d} (1/h)
				(1/h)	7 ₁ = 5 a	$T_1 = 10 a$	$T_1 = 5a$ $T_1 = 10a$ $T_1 = 5or 10$		•	•				•	•		•
$U_{\rm n} = 230 \text{ V}$	>									1				1			
꿉	m	m	a	2.84E-09 5.91E-05 1.19E-04	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10530 ≥90 >90	≥90	>90	m	-	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R2	т	т	a		2.84E-09 5.91E-05 1.19E-04	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10529	290 ≻90	>90	m	-	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
83	m	т	a	e 2.84E-09 5.91E-05 1.19E-04	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.37E-04 10489 ≥90 >90	10489	≥90	>90	m	н	80	20	80 20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R4	m	М	a	2.89E-09	2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10442 ≥90 >90	≥90	>90	m	н	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R5	m	т	a		2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10240 ≥90 >90	≥90	>90	m	П	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R6	m	m	a	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	e 2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04 2.41E-04 10340 ≥90 >90	10340	≥90	>90	m	п	80	20	80 20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R7	m	m	a	2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340 ≥90 >90	≥90	>90	m	П	80		20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
88	m	ж	a	e 2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340 ≥90 >90	290	>90	т	п	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08

				DEH		PFD _{avg}											
Frame size	SIL SC PL	SC	7	$(T_1 = 20$	Perfect p	roof test	Perfect proof test Simplified MTTF _D DC SFF proof test (a) (%) (%)	MTTF _D	DC SFF		Cat.	HFT	CCF	7 ∑ (a)	Cat. HFT CCF $_{(a)}^{T_M}$ PFH $_{diag}^{DFH diag}$	λ _{Diag_s} (1/h)	λ _{Diag_d} (1/h)
				(1/h)	7 ₁ = 5 a	$T_1 = 5a$ $T_1 = 10a$	$T_1 = 5 \text{ or}$;			
$U_{\rm n} = 400 \rm V$, $U_{\rm n} = 500 \rm V$	00 /,] ່ຶ່	= 50	> 0 c													
돲	m	m	a	2.84E-09	2.84E-09 5.91E-05 1.19E-04	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10530 ≥90 >90	≥90	^90	m	-	80	20	80 20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R2	m	m	a	2.84E-09	5.91E-05	1.19E-04	2.84E-09 5.91E-05 1.19E-04 2.37E-04	10529 ≥90 >90	≥90	^90	m	H	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
23	m	m	a	2.84E-09	5.91E-05 1.19E-04	1.19E-04	2.37E-04	10489	06< 06≥	^90	m	H	80	20	6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R	т	m	a	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04 2.41E-04	10442 ≥90 >90	≥90	^90	m	н	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R5	m	m	a	2.89E-09	6.02E-05 1.21E-04	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10240 ≥90 >90	≥90	^90	m	н	80	20	6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R6	m	m	a	2.89E-09	6.02E-05	1.21E-04	2.89E-09 6.02E-05 1.21E-04 2.41E-04	10340 ≥90 >90	≥90	^90	m	н	80		20 6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
R7	m	m	a	2.89E-09	6.02E-05 1.21E-04	1.21E-04	2.41E-04	10340 ≥90 >90	≥90	^90	m	н	80	20	6.10E-09 1.41E-07 1.10E-08	1.41E-07	1.10E-08
88	m	m	a	3.21E-09	6.67E-05 1.34E-04	1.34E-04	2.67E-04	4310	>30 >90	^90	m	н	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.53E-07 1.10E-08	1.53E-07	1.10E-08
82 62	т	m	a	3.21E-09	6.67E-05	6.67E-05 1.34E-04	2.67E-04	4310	06< 06⋜	06<	m	н	80	20	20 6.10E-09 1.53E-07 1.10E-08	1.53E-07	1.10E-08

				H		PFD _{avg}											
Frame size	SIL	SC	7	$(\tau_1 = 20$	Perfect p	roof test	Frame SIL SC PL $(T_1=20)$ Perfect proof test proof test sproof test proof test	MTTF _D DC SFF (a) (%) (%)	S 20	SFF (%)	Cat.	F	CCF	ر (ق	Cat. HFT CCF T_{M} PFH _{diag} λ_{Diag_s} (1/h) (1/h)	λ _{Diag_s} (1/h)	λ _{Diag_d} (1/h)
				(1/h)	T ₁ = 5 a	$T_1 = 10 a$	$T_1 = 5a$ $T_1 = 10a$ $T_1 = 5or 10$										
<i>U</i> _n = 690 V	>		1														
83	m	m	a	3.24E-09	6.69E-05	1.34E-04	e 3.24E-09 6.69E-05 1.34E-04 2.68E-04	6221 ≥90 ≥90	≥90		m	н	80	20	80 20 6.20E-09 1.67E-07 1.20E-08	1.67E-07	1.20E-08
R5	m	m	a	3.23E-09	6.68E-05	1.34E-04	e 3.23E-09 6.68E-05 1.34E-04 2.67E-04	5879	≥90	06≥ 06≥	m	н	80	20	20 6.20E-09 1.89E-07 1.20E-08	1.89E-07	1.20E-08
R6	m	m	a	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	3.21E-09 6.66E-05 1.33E-04 2.66E-04	4310	≥90	06≥ 06≥	m	н	80	20	20 6.20E-09 1.53E-07 1.20E-08	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
R7	m	m	a	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	3.21E-09 6.66E-05 1.33E-04 2.66E-04	4310	≥90	06≥ 06≥	m	н	80		20 6.20E-09 1.53E-07 1.20E-08	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
88	т	m	a	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	3.21E-09 6.66E-05 1.33E-04 2.66E-04	4310	≥90	06< 06<	m	н	80	20	80 20 6.20E-09 1.53E-07 1.20E-08	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
82	m	m	a	3.21E-09	6.66E-05	1.33E-04	e 3.21E-09 6.66E-05 1.33E-04 2.66E-04	4310 ≥90 ≥90	≥90	≥90	м	н	8	20	80 20 6.20E-09 1.53E-07 1.20E-08	1.53E-07	1.20E-08
								3AXD:	1000	1609	373 C	3AXI	01000	01160	3AXD10001609373 C, 3AXD10001609374 E, 3AXD10001609375 D	XD100016	09375 D

- Drives with UCU-20 control unit (option +V998): The values for DC, PFH $_{diag'}$ λ_{Diag_s} and λ_{Diag_d} in the table are according to ISO 13849-1. These values are not claimed according to IEC 61508. For drives with other control units, the values for DC, PFH $_{diag'}$ λ_{Diag_s} and λ_{Diag_d} are according to ISO 13849-1 and IEC 61508.
- The STO is a type A safety component as defined in IEC 61508-2.
- Relevant failure modes:
 - The STO trips spuriously (safe failure)
 - The STO does not activate when requested
 - A fault exclusion on the failure mode "short circuit on printed circuit board" has been made (EN 13849-2, table D.5). The analysis is based on an assumption that one failure occurs at one time. No accumulated failures have been analyzed.
- STO response times:
 - · STO reaction time (shortest detectable break): 1 ms
 - STO response time:
 - with ZCU-12: 2 ms (typical), 10 ms (maximum)
 - with UCU-20: 2 ms (typical), 25 ms (maximum)
 - Fault detection time: Channels in different states for longer than 200 ms
 - Fault reaction time: Fault detection time + 10 ms.
- Indication delays:
 - STO fault indication (parameter 31.22) delay: < 500 ms
 - STO warning indication (parameter 31.22) delay: < 1000 ms.

Terms and abbreviations

Term or abbreviation	Reference	Description
Cat.	EN ISO 13849-1	Classification of the safety-related parts of a control system in respect of their resistance to faults and their subsequent behavior in the fault condition, and which is achieved by the structural arrangement of the parts, fault detection and/or by their reliability. The categories are: B, 1, 2, 3 and 4.
CCF	EN ISO 13849-1	Common cause failure (%)
DC	EN ISO 13849-1	Diagnostic coverage (%)
HFT	IEC 61508	Hardware fault tolerance
MTTF _D	EN ISO 13849-1	Mean time to dangerous failure: (Total number of life units) / (Number of dangerous, undetected failures) during a particular measurement interval under stated conditions

Term or abbreviation	Reference	Description
PFD _{avg}	IEC 61508	Average probability of dangerous failure on demand, that is, mean unavailability of a safety-related system to perform the specified safety function when a demand occurs
PFH	IEC 61508	Average frequency of dangerous failures per hour, that is, average frequency of a dangerous failure of a safety related system to perform the specified safety function over a given period of time
PFH _{diag}	IEC/EN 62061	Average frequency of dangerous failures per hour for the diagnostic function of STO
PL	EN ISO 13849-1	Performance level. Levels ae correspond to SIL
Proof test	IEC 61508, IEC 62061	Periodic test performed to detect failures in a safety-related system so that, if necessary, a repair can restore the system to an "as new" condition or as close as practical to this condition
sc	IEC 61508	Systematic capability (13)
SFF	IEC 61508	Safe failure fraction (%)
SIL	IEC 61508	Safety integrity level (13)
STO	IEC/EN 61800-5-2	Safe torque off
τ ₁	IEC 61508-6	Proof test interval. T_1 is a parameter used to define the probabilistic failure rate (PFH or PFD) for the safety function or subsystem. Performing a proof test at a maximum interval of T_1 is required to keep the SIL capability valid. The same interval must be followed to keep the PL capability (EN ISO 13849) valid. See also section Maintenance.
T _M	EN ISO 13849-1	Mission time: the period of time covering the intended use of the safety function/device. After the mission time elapses, the safety device must be replaced. Note that any $T_{\rm M}$ values given cannot be regarded as a guarantee or warranty.
λ _{Diag_d}	IEC 61508-6	Dangerous failure rate (per hour) of the diagnostics function of STO
λ _{Diag_s}	IEC 61508-6	Safe failure rate (per hour) of the diagnostics function of STO

••	
TUV	certificate

The TÜV certificate is available on the Internet.



Filters

Contents of this chapter

This chapter describes how to select external filters for the drive.

When is a common mode filter or du/dt filter needed?

Refer to Examining the compatibility of the motor and drive (page 68).

Common mode filters

Common mode filter kits are available from ABB. The kits include three wound cores.

Name	Code
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 frame R6 (option +E208) installation instructions	3AXD50000015178
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 frame R7, and for ACS880-11, ACS880-31 frame R8 (option +E208) installation instructions	3AXD50000015179
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 drives (frame R8, option +E208) installation guide	3AXD50000015180
Common mode filter kit for ACS880-01 drives (frame R9, option +E208) installation instructions	3AXD50000015201

Name	Code
Input side common mode filter kit for ACS880-01-490A-3, -477A-5 and -453A-4 (option +E202) and for ACS580-01, ACH580-01 and ACQ580-01 -490A-4 and -477A-4 installation instructions	3AXD50001192297

du/dt filters

■ d*u*/d*t* filter types

ACS880- 01	d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> filter type	ACS880- du/dt filter 11 type		ACS880- 01	d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> filter type
U _N =	400 V	U _N =	U _N = 500 V		690 V
02A4-3	NOCH0016-6X	02A1-5	NOCH0016-6X	07A4-7	NOCH0016-6X
03A3-3	NOCH0016-6X	03A0-5	NOCH0016-6X	09A9-7	NOCH0016-6X
04A0-3	NOCH0016-6X	03A4-5	NOCH0016-6X	14A3-7	NOCH0016-6X
05A6-3	NOCH0016-6X	04A8-5	NOCH0016-6X	019A-7	NOCH0030-6X
07A2-3	NOCH0016-6X	05A2-5	NOCH0016-6X	023A-7	NOCH0030-6X
09A4-3	NOCH0016-6X	07A6-5	NOCH0016-6X	027A-7	NOCH0030-6X
12A6-3	NOCH0016-6X	11A0-5	NOCH0016-6X	07A3-7	NOCH0016-6X
017A-3	NOCH0030-6X	014A-5	NOCH0030-6X	09A8-7	NOCH0016-6X
025A-3	NOCH0030-6X	021A-5	NOCH0030-6X	14A2-7	NOCH0016-6X
032A-3	NOCH0070-6X	027A-5	NOCH0070-6X	018A-7	NOCH0030-6X
038A-3	NOCH0070-6X	034A-5	NOCH0070-6X	022A-7	NOCH0030-6X
045A-3	NOCH0070-6X	040A-5	NOCH0070-6X	026A-7	NOCH0030-6X
061A-3	NOCH0070-6X	052A-5	NOCH0070-6X	035A-7	NOCH0070-6X
072A-3	NOCH0120-6X	065A-5	NOCH0120-6X	042A-7	NOCH0070-6X
087A-3	NOCH0120-6X	077A-5	NOCH0120-6X	049A-7	NOCH0070-6X
105A-3	NOCH0120-6X	096A-5	NOCH0120-6X	061A-7	NOCH0120-6X
145A-3	FOCH0260-7X	124A-5	FOCH0260-7X	084A-7	NOCH0120-6X
169A-3	FOCH0260-7X	156A-5	FOCH0260-7X	098A-7	NOCH0120-6X
206A-3	FOCH0260-7X	180A-5	FOCH0260-7X	119A-7	FOCH0260-7X
246A-3	FOCH0260-7X	240A-5	FOCH0260-7X	142A-7	FOCH0260-7X
293A-3	FOCH0260-7X	260A-5	FOCH0260-7X	174A-7	FOCH0260-7X
363A-3	FOCH0320-5X	302A-5	FOCH0320-5X	210A-7	FOCH0260-7X
430A-3	FOCH0320-5X	361A-5	FOCH0320-5X	271A-7	FOCH0260-7X

ACS880- 01	d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> filter type	ACS880- 01	d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> filter type	ACS880- 01	d <i>u</i> /d <i>t</i> filter type
490A-3	-	414A-5	FOCH0320-5X		
		477A-5	-		

\blacksquare Description, installation and technical data of the du/dt filters

Refer to:

- FOCH du/dt filters hardware manual (3AFE68577519 [English])
- AOCH and NOCH du/dt filters hardware manual (3AFE58933368 [English]).

Sine filters

Selecting a sine filter for a drive

Check housing of sine filters from the manufacturer's internet pages. Go to $\label{eq:housing} $$https://en.tdk.eu$$

ACS880-01	Sine filter type	I _{cont. max}	P _{cont.}	Heat dissipation			Noise
			max	Drive	Filter	Total	
		Α	kW	w	w	w	dB (A)
U _N = 400 V	·						
02A4-3	B84143V0004R229*	2.3	1.7	30	60	90	72
03A3-3	B84143V0004R229*	3.1	2.3	40	60	100	72
04A0-3	B84143V0004R229*	3.8	2.9	52	60	112	72
05A6-3	B84143V0006R229*	5.3	4.0	73	100	173	72
07A2-3	B84143V0011R229*	7.2	5.4	94	90	184	72
09A4-3	B84143V0011R229*	9.2	6.9	122	90	212	72
12A6-3	B84143V0016R229*	12.1	9.1	172	80	252	72
017A-3	B84143V0025R229*	16	12.1	232	140	372	75
025A-3	B84143V0025R229*	24	17.7	337	140	477	75
032A-3	B84143V0033R229*	31	23.4	457	160	617	75
038A-3	B84143V0050R229*	37	27.5	562	220	782	78
045A-3	B84143V0050R229*	43	32.4	667	220	887	78
061A-3	B84143V0066R229*	58	43.7	907	250	1157	78
072A-3	B84143V0075R229*	64	48.2	1117	310	1427	79
* minimum switch	ning frequency 4.5 kHz			1	I.	1	1
** minimum switc	hing frequency 3.6 kHz						

ACS880-01	Sine filter type	I _{cont. max}	P _{cont.}	Heat	dissipa	ation	Noise
			max	Drive	Filter	Total	
		A	kW	W	W	W	dB (A)
087A-3	B84143V0095R229*	77	58.0	1120	400	1520	79
105A-3	B84143V0130S230**	91	68.6	1295	600	1895	80
145A-3	B84143V0162S229**	126	94.6	1440	550	1990	80
169A-3	B84143V0162S229**	153	115.0	1940	550	2490	80
206A-3	B84143V0230S229**	187	140.6	2310	900	3210	80
246A-3	B84143V0230S229**	209	157.6	3300	900	4200	80
293A-3	B84143V0390S229**	249	187.8	3900	1570	5470	80
363A-3	B84143V0390S229**	297	223.6	4800	1570	6370	80
430A-3	B84143V0390S229**	352	265.2	6000	1570	7570	80
490A-3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U _N = 500 V					ı		I
02A1-5	B84143V0004R229*	1.9	1.4	30	60	90	72
03A0-5	B84143V0004R229*	2.8	2.1	40	60	100	72
03A4-5	B84143V0004R229*	3.1	2.3	52	60	112	72
04A8-5	B84143V0006R229*	4.4	3.3	73	100	173	72
05A2-5	B84143V0006R229*	4.8	3.6	94	100	194	72
07A6-5	B84143V0011R229*	7.0	5.3	122	90	212	72
11A0-5	B84143V0011R229*	10.2	7.7	172	90	262	72
014A-5	B84143V0016R229*	13	9.8	232	80	312	70
021A-5	B84143V0025R229*	20	14.7	337	140	477	75
027A-5	B84143V0033R229*	25	18.8	457	160	617	75
034A-5	B84143V0050R229*	32	23.7	562	220	782	78
040A-5	B84143V0050R229*	35	26.0	667	220	887	78
052A-5	B84143V0066R229*	44	33.2	907	250	1157	78
065A-5	B84143V0066R229*	52	39.2	1117	250	1367	78
077A-5	B84143V0075R229*	61	46.0	1120	310	1430	78
096A-5	B84143V0130R230**	80	60.6	1295	630	1925	80
124A-5	B84143V0130S230**	104	78.7	1440	630	2070	80
156A-5	B84143V0162S229**	140	105.8	1940	550	2490	80
	ning frequency 4.5 kHz						
** minimum switc	hing frequency 3.6 kHz						

ACS880-01	Sine filter type	I _{cont. max}	P _{cont.}	Heat	dissipa	ation	Noise
			max	Drive	Filter	Total	
		A	kW	W	w	w	dB (A)
180A-5	B84143V0162S229**	161	121.3	2310	550	2860	80
240A-5	B84143V0230S229**	205	154.3	3300	900	4200	80
260A-5	B84143V0230S229**	221	166.7	3900	900	4800	80
361A-5	B84143V0390S229**	289	217.9	4800	1570	6370	80
414A-5	B84143V0390S229**	332	250.1	6000	1570	7570	80
477A-5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
U _N = 690 V		<u>'</u>					
07A4-7	B84143V0010R230*	7.3	5.5	114	90	204	72
09A9-7	B84143V0010R230*	9.3	7.0	143	90	233	72
14A3-7	B84143V0018R230*	13.5	10.2	207	130	337	72
019A-7	B84143V0018R230*	17.1	12.9	274	130	404	72
023A-7	B84143V0026R230*	21	15.7	329	160	489	72
027A-7	B84143V0026R230*	25	18.6	405	160	565	72
07A3-7	B84143V0010R230*	7.3	5.5	217	90	307	72
09A8-7	B84143V0010R230*	9.3	7.0	284	90	374	72
14A2-7	B84143V0018R230*	13.5	10.2	399	130	529	72
018A-7	B84143V0018R230*	17.1	12.9	490	130	620	72
022A-7	B84143V0026R230*	21	15.7	578	160	738	72
026A-7	B84143V0026R230*	25	18.6	660	160	820	72
035A-7	B84143V0040R230*	33	25.1	864	250	1114	75
042A-7	B84143V0040R230*	40	30.1	998	250	1248	75
049A-7	B84143V0056R230**	48	36.2	1120	290	1410	78
061A-7	B84143V0056R230**	56	42.5	1295	290	1585	78
084A-7	B84143V0092R230**	78	58.6	1440	610	2050	79
098A-7	B84143V0092R230**	92	69.3	1940	610	2550	79
119A-7	B84143V0130S230**	112	84.2	2310	630	2940	80
142A-7	B84143V0130S230**	112	84.7	3300	630	3930	80
174A-7	B84143V0207S230**	138	103.7	3900	930	4830	80
210A-7	B84143V0207S230**	161	121.3	4200	930	5130	80
* minimum switch	ing frequency 4.5 kHz	1	<u> </u>	1	1	ı	I

** minimum switching frequency 3.6 kHz

ACS880-01	Sine filter type	I _{cont. max}	P _{cont.}	P _{cont.} Heat dissipation			ation	Noise
			max	Drive	Filter	Total		
		Α	kW	W	W	w	dB (A)	
271A-7	B84143V0207S230**	208	156.4	4800	930	5730	80	
3AXD00000588487								
* minimum switch	ing frequency 4.5 kHz							
** minimum switch	ning frequency 3.6 kHz							

Definitions

P _{cont. max}	Maximum continuous output power of the drive
I _{cont. max}	Maximum continuous output current of the drive
Noise	Noise level of the sine filters

Derating

Refer to Deratings for special settings in the drive control program (page 215).

Description, installation and technical data

Refer to Sine filters hardware manual (3AXD50000016814 [English]).

Further information

Product and service inquiries

Address any inquiries about the product to your local ABB representative, quoting the type designation and serial number of the unit in question. A listing of ABB sales, support and service contacts can be found by navigating to new.abb.com/contact-centers.

Product training

For information on ABB product training, navigate to new.abb.com/service/training.

Providing feedback on ABB manuals

Your comments on our manuals are welcome. Navigate to forms.abb.com/form-26567.

Document library on the Internet

You can find manuals and other product documents in PDF format on the Internet at www.abb.com/drives/documents.



www.abb.com/drives



3AUA0000078093U